

SPECTRUM



Melbourne
House

SPECTRUM MACHINE LANGUAGE FOR THE ABSOLUTE BEGINNER

Edited by William Tang



SPECTRUM MACHINE LANGUAGE FOR THE ABSOLUTE BEGINNER

**Edited by
William Tang**



Melbourne House Publishers

Published in the United Kingdom by:
Melbourne House (Publishers) Ltd.,
Church Yard,
Tring, Hertfordshire HP23 5LU
ISBN 0 86161 110 1

Published in Australia by:
Melbourne House (Australia) Pty. Ltd.,
Suite 4, 75 Palmerston Crescent,
South Melbourne, Victoria 3205.

Published in the United States of America by:
Melbourne House Software Inc.,
347 Reedwood Drive,
Nashville TN 37217.

Copyright © 1982 Beam Software

The terms Sinclair, ZX, ZX80, ZX81, ZX Spectrum, ZX Microdrive, ZX Interface, ZX Net, Microdrive, Microdrive Cartridge, ZX Printer and ZX Power Supply are all Trademarks of Sinclair Research Limited.

All rights reserved. This book is copyright. No part of this book may be copied or stored by any means whatsoever whether mechanical or electronic, except for private or study use as defined in the Copyright Act. All enquiries should be addressed to the publishers.

Printed in Hong Kong by Colorcraft Ltd.

D C B A 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Finding Your way around Machine Language:

The Beginning	5
Basic Machine Language Concepts	11
The Way Computers Count	18
How Information is Represented	24
A Look into the CPU	30
This is All Very Well ...	39
How the CPU Uses its Limbs	43
Counting Off Numbers on One Hand	51
Flags and their Uses	58
Counting Up and Down	64
One Handed Arithmetic	69
Logical Operators	75
Coping with Two Handed Numbers	79
Manipulating Numbers with Two Hands	83
Manipulating the Stack	91
Two fisted arithmetic	95
Loops and Jumps	99
Use of Subroutines	106
Block Operations	109
Instructions That are Less Frequently Used	
<hr/>	
Register Exchanges	115
Bit, Set and Reset	117
Rotates and Shifts	119
In and Out	122
BCD Representation	126
Interrupts	127
Restarts	128

Programming Your Spectrum

Planning Your Program	130
Features of the Spectrum	135

Monitor Programs

EZ-Code Machine Language Editor	145
HexLoad Machine Code Monitor	155

The FREEWAY FROG Program

Program Design	161
Stage 1 - Data base	164
Stage 2 - Initialisation	172
Stage 3 - Regular Traffic	176
Stage 4 - Police Car	181
Stage 5 - The Frog	185
Stage 6 - Control	190

Appendices:

Spectrum key Input Table	227
Screen display Map	228
Character set Table	229
Decimal/Hexadecimal conversions	230
Falg Operations Summary	234
Z80 Instructions by op-code	236
Z80 Instructions by mnemonics	240

The Beginning

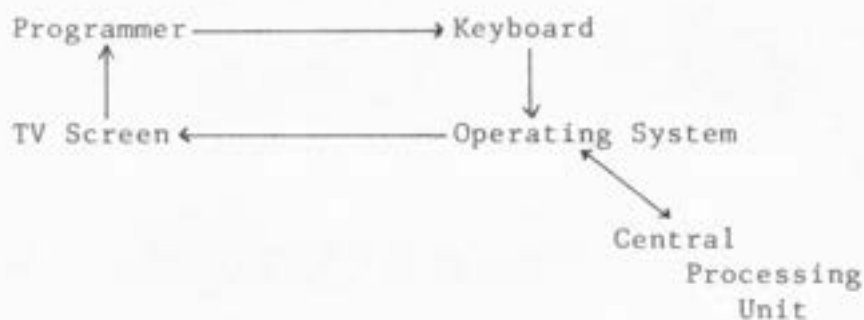
This book is designed as an introduction to the field of machine and assembly language programming for the "Sinclair ZX Spectrum."

It may be that you are coming to this book with no clear idea of what machine language programming is all about.

You may not even know what machine language is. You may not even be aware that there is a difference between machine language and assembly language, nor indeed how they differ from programming in BASIC.

Don't worry, and don't be frightened by the jargon - we will explain everything step by step.

First, let us look at the way a computer operates:



What this diagram aims to show is that there is a barrier between the programmer and the brain of the Spectrum, the Central Processing Unit. It is not possible under normal processing for the programmer to tell the Central Processing Unit - usually referred to as the CPU - what to do.

In the Sinclair machines, the CPU chosen is the Z80A chip, which is a faster version of the popular Z80 chip. There are 4 chips - Z80, 6502, 6809, and 8088 - which have become widely accepted as CPUs for microcomputers. The Z80 is by far the most popular chip.

I am sure it comes as no surprise to learn that the Z80A does not understand a word of 'BASIC'! Indeed no CPU has been designed so that we can communicate directly with the brain of the computer.

If you think about it for long enough, you will realise that it would be very difficult, if not impossible, in any case to give a chip in a computer an instruction that would make any sense to a human. Take the top off your Sinclair (if you dare!) and have a look at the chip nearest to the speaker - this is the Z80A CPU. Obviously this chip in your computer can only respond to electrical signals that are passed on to it by the rest of the circuitry!

What is Machine Language?

The Z80 chip has been designed in such a way that it can accept signals simultaneously from eight of the pins connected to it.

The designers of the Z80 chip constructed it in such a way that different combinations of signals to the Z80 chip along these eight pins would 'instruct' the Z80 to perform different functions.

Keeping in mind that what is really happening are electrical signals, let's adopt a convention to represent these signals - for example showing a '1' if there is a signal to one of the pins, or a '0' if there is no signal.

A typical instruction might therefore look something like:

0 0 1 1 1 1 0 0

Quite a long way from something like

'Let A = A + 1',
for example, isn't it!

Nonetheless, this is what machine language is all about. The name says it all! It is a language for machines. Each manufacturer of the different chips has designed a different 'language' for its products!

At this stage you may be asking yourself - if this is what machine language is all about, why bother? Why not accept the benefits of someone else's work which allows me to program the computer in a language I can easily understand, such as BASIC or COBOL?

The reason is because of the main benefits of machine language which are:

- * FASTER EXECUTION OF THE PROGRAM
- * MORE EFFICIENT USE OF MEMORY
- * SHORTER PROGRAMS (in memory)
- * FREEDOM FROM THE OPERATING SYSTEM

All of the above benefits are a direct result of programming in a language that the CPU can understand without having to have it translated first. When you program in BASIC, the operating system is the machine language program that is really being run by the machine. The program is something like:

Next	Look at next instruction
	Translate it into a series of
	machine language instructions
	Perform each instruction
	Store the result if required
	Go to Next again

If you are wondering where the computer finds this program, the operating system, it is in the ROM. In other words, it is built into the Spectrum. (ROM is the abbreviation for Read Only Memory, memory locations whose content you cannot change, but can only be read/PEEKed.)

Programming in BASIC can be up to 60 times slower than a program written directly in machine language!

This is because translation takes time, and also the resulting machine language instructions generated usually are less efficient. Similarly, it is usually faster to drive yourself than to take public transport; you can take shortcuts you know, instead of following the public transport route which needs to cater for the GENERAL public CASE.

Nonetheless, we would have to be among the first to admit that programming in machine language does have drawbacks.

The main disadvantage of machine language are:

- * PROGRAMS ARE DIFFICULT TO READ AND DEBUG
- * IMPOSSIBLE TO ADAPT TO OTHER COMPUTERS
- * LONGER PROGRAMS (in instructions)
- * ARITHMETIC CALCULATIONS DIFFICULT

This means that you must make a very conscious decision of which programming method you should use for each particular application.

A very long program for financial applications should be written in a language designed to deal with numbers and one in which programs can be easily modified if required.

On the other hand there is nothing quite so bad as an arcade game written in BASIC - when you get down to it, it is just too slow.

Your own needs, the amount of memory in your computer, the response time required, the time available for development, and so on will determine your choice of programming language.

Thus, in summary, machine language is a series of commands which the CPU can understand and which can be represented by numbers.

What is Assembly Language?

Quite obviously if machine language could only be represented by numbers, very few people would be able to write programs in machine language.

After all, who could make sense of a program which looked like

```
0 0 1 0 0 0 0 1
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
0 1 0 0 0 0 0 0
etc ...
```

Fortunately, we can invent a series of names for each of these numbers. Assembly Language is just such a representation of Machine Language so that it can be read by humans in a form that is easier to understand than

```
0 1 1 1 0 1 1 1.
```

There is only one difference between Assembly Language and Machine Language: Assembly Language is one level higher than Machine Language. It is more easily read by humans than Machine Language, but on the other hand, computers can't read Assembly Language.

It is not an adaptation of Machine Language such as BASIC. For each Assembly Language instruction there is an identical (in function) Machine Language instruction, and vice versa. ie. there is a ONE-TO-ONE relationship between them. We can therefore say that Assembly Language is EQUIVALENT to Machine Language.

Assembly Language makes use of mnemonics (or abbreviations) to enhance readability. For example at this stage, the instruction

```
INC    HL
```

may not mean much to you, but at least you can read it. If you were told that 'INC' is a standard abbreviation (or mnemonic) for INCrease and that HL is a 'variable', then by simply looking at that instruction you can get a feel for what is happening.

The same instruction in Machine Language is

```
0 0 1 0 0 0 1 1
```

Now obviously you can also "read" that instruction in the sense that you can read the number, but it isn't going to mean much to you unless you have a table to look up or when your brain is functioning almost like a computer.

Assembly Language can be converted directly to machine code by a program or by you. Such a program is called an ASSEMBLER. You can see this as a program which performs the rather boring task of translating your assembly language program into a sequence of machine language instructions that the Spectrum will understand. And we understand that an ASSEMBLER for the ZX Spectrum is already available.

Nonetheless, such assemblers typically require 6K of memory, and are therefore of limited use on a 16K machine. The Spectrum display takes up 7K of memory, and after loading the Assembler you may have only 4K of memory left for your assembly language program. (This will means about 1/2 K of machine language program).

The alternative to an Assembler program is for you to do the translation of the assembly language mnemonics into machine language by hand, using the tables provided in this book.

It's hard, it's frustrating at first, it's inconvenient, but it's wonderful practice and gives you a great insight into the way the Spectrum CPU works.

We would in fact recommend that you try writing short machine language programs in this way - ie writing them in assembly language and translating it into machine language by hand - before buying an Assembler program.



SUMMARY

CPU

The central processing unit of the computer. This is the chip that does the controlling and calculating work in the computer.

Machine Language

The language understood by the CPU. For the Spectrum's CPU, this is the Z80 machine language which is made up of about 200 'instructions'.

BASIC language

A computer language designed to be intelligible to humans. When a computer executes a command in BASIC, it needs to translate this command into a series of machine language commands. BASIC programs are therefore considerably slower than machine language programs but easier to write.

Assembly Language

The human shorthand representation of the machine language instructions so that each of the latter instructions can be understood more easily. For example, HALT is the assembly language equivalent of the machine language instruction 0 1 1 1 0 1 1 0.

Assembler Program

A program that translates assembly language instructions (easily read and understood by human) into machine language instructions (which can be understood by the computer eg the Spectrum).

Read Only Memory (ROM)

A long machine language program usually known as FIRMWARE; a program that has been FIRMLY built into the hardware of the computer; it will remain there even when the power is off. For the Spectrum, the ROM is in Z80 machine code, and was written specifically for it. The ROM of Spectrum occupies from memory locations 0 to 16383. You can only refer to the contents of these locations, unlike the rest of memory which you can refer to and change as desired.

BASIC Machine Language Concepts

WHAT IS THE CPU?

If we want to communicate with the computer we have to know what sort of commands it will accept and what language the brains of the machine (the CPU) talks.

Unless we know what sort of information the CPU understands we can't really instruct the computer to perform remarkable tasks from being a chess partner to an accountant looking after our accounts.

The CPU is no big mystery. I like to think of the CPU as a lonely little fellow, sitting in the middle of your Spectrum, being asked to do things all the time.

Especially calculations.

But the poor fellow doesn't even have a piece of paper and pencil to keep track of what is happening. How does he do it?

The design of the CPU:

At this stage, I should probably tell you about the way that the designers of the Z80 see things, and how the CPU is supposed to handle them. The CPU has been designed to do extremely simple tasks only, but he is able to do those tasks very quickly.

We mentioned above that the CPU doesn't even have pencil and paper, and that is part of the design of the CPU. Any number he can't remember or keep track of has to go in a box for safe keeping.

Let us look at one example - say you want the CPU to work out the time in NEW YORK, knowing the time in LONDON.

Now given that the CPU doesn't know anything, first of all you have to tell it what the time in London is: say 10 o'clock. The CPU has nowhere to keep this information and doesn't know what you will ask it to do next, so it puts that information away in a box, say box #1.

Then you have to tell it the time difference between New York and London, say five hours earlier, and it puts that away in box #2.

Comes the time for calculations, it races across to box #1, gets the number, goes to box #2, performs the calculation, and puts the result away, say in box #3.

$$10 - 5 = 5$$

The answer of course is 5 o'clock.

All of this racing between boxes, adding, subtracting and so on would be extremely tedious if the CPU had to do it all in its head, so it does exactly what you or I would do - it counts on its fingers and toes.

The CPU's hands and feet are called Registers.

The 280 chip in your Spectrum is remarkable in that it has a lot of hands and toes - but we will get to that later.

To illustrate how exactly the CPU calculates the time difference in the above exercise, let's call one of the CPU's hands "HAND A". How does the CPU manipulate the contents of the box #1 and box #2?

The following sequence is pretty close to what the CPU would actually do given the above instructions

- * Count out the value of box #1 on the fingers of Hand A;
- * Subtract the contents of box #2 from what he has already on his fingers;
- * Look at the value on the fingers of Hand A and store it in box #3.

Now if this is what truly happens, there are some pretty phenomenal conclusions to be drawn from this:

1. The CPU would not be able to deal with a number like 11.53 - it could only deal in whole numbers.
2. The CPU would be limited in its calculations to whatever number it could count on its fingers.

This is indeed true.

The main consolation however is that the CPU has a lot of hands and feet and can count on each of them separately, and that it can count to 255 using only the 8 fingers of Hand A.

We will deal in the next chapter with the details of how the CPU can count up to more than 8 on each hand while we can only manage 10 using two hands! Suffice it to say that each hand can count to 255 and each foot can be used to count to over 64,000!

The time difference exercise above has still not been represented

in anything like the language the CPU understands - all we have done is describe the processes.

To let you have an early look into the exciting part of machine language programming, let's now use mnemonics (Abbreviations) to instruct the CPU at each step:

SETTING UP:

```
LD    (BOX #1),  10    ;Load box 1 with 10
LD    (BOX #2),   5    ;load box 2 with 5
```

CALCULATIONS:

```
LD    A, (BOX #1)      ;load A with box 1 contents
SUB   A, (BOX #2)      ;subtract contents of box 2
```

STORING THE RESULT:

```
LD    (BOX #3),  A     ;load box 3 with A value
```

These instructions may seem a little terse at first, but after all, mnemonics are mnemonics.

"LD" is an abbreviation for LOAD so that

```
LD  A,1
```

for example, would mean load A with 1: that is count off 'one' on the fingers of hand A.

We also use a rather clever image in these mnemonics by the use of brackets: THE BRACKETS ARE USED TO INDICATE WE WISH TO DEAL WITH THE CONTENTS OF WHATEVER IS INSIDE THE BRACKETS.

It should be fairly easy to remember this on a visual basis because brackets do look like they are meant to indicate a container.

So running through the mnemonics above, we load the contents of Box #1 and #2 with 10 and 5, ...etc... to get the final result of 5 in box #3.

All of this is fairly simple to follow and I am sure you can understand that while you are doing this calculation, the numbers on Hand "A" are used to represent the time in New York. A minute later they may be used to represent the number of employees in a company, and at some other time how much money you have.

If you are used to the concept of variables from your BASIC programming, you must leave that behind in machine language programming.

The fingers of Hand "A" are not a variable in the same sense as in a BASIC program. They are merely what the CPU uses to count with.

ONE OF THE BIG DIFFERENCES IN PROGRAMMING IN MACHINE LANGUAGE AND PROGRAMMING IN BASIC IS THIS LACK OF VARIABLES.

You may realise that you can think of the BOXES we use to store information as being similar to BASIC variables if we gave each one a name.

Yes, you are absolutely correct, but these are not variables either. They can be immensely useful and perform similar storage purposes to variables, but bear in mind that these boxes are no more than memory locations set aside for a specific purpose.

The way the CPU copes with negative numbers is different, and we will look into that later.

What if the CPU runs out of hands?:

I should mention here that you would probably find the CPU a very strange looking fellow were you to meet him in the street.

His hands have eight fingers each, and he has eight hands! He only has two feet, but each foot has 16 toes, and he is extremely agile with his toes!

He is therefore well suited for the large number of calculations he is required to do, keeping track of all the numbers on his fingers and toes.

Nonetheless, it is possible that in some cases the CPU will not have enough hands to do the calculation it wishes to perform, or that for one reason or other the programmer will wish the CPU to stop in the middle of calculation to do something else.

The CPU can't just put the information away in boxes, because then it would have to keep some hands free just to keep track of which boxes it put the information in!

The Z80 CPU gets away with using a stack, which is one of those tall spiky things that some people keep on their desks to store bills, spare notes, etc. I am sure you have seen those stacks, where you spike one piece of paper on, and then the next one, and so on. It's a great filing system if you want the top piece of paper only, but very inconvenient if you want one in the middle, because you have to riffle through all the pieces of paper on the stack.

As it happens, it's a very convenient system for the CPU because it ever only needs to look at the top piece of information.

Whenever an interruption causes the CPU to stop doing its calculations, it PUSHes all the information it has on its hands onto the STACK, and as soon as the interruption is over, it POPs the top bits off, and continues with its work.

In computer terminology, we call this spike a "STACK". When we put a piece of information on the stack, we "PUSH" it on, and when we get it off, we "POP" it off.

All kinds of information can be "PUSH"ed and "POP"ed on and off the stack - for example in the middle of a complex calculation the CPU may wish to save all the information on its many hands and feet, and this would then involve many separate "PUSH"es. To retrieve the information, there then needs to be many separate "POP"s.

For reasons best know to the designers of the Z80, our CPU likes to keep the stack stuck to the ceiling. This means that the more information is "PUSH"ed onto the stack, the further the stack grows downwards.

The main advantage of using the stack to store temporary bits of information is that the CPU does not need to remember which box the information is in - it knows it is the last piece of information "PUSH"ed on the stack. Naturally it needs to be a little bit organised if there are many bits of information to be PUSHed and POPed.

What can the CPU do?:

I think it's worth considering at this stage the type of instructions that the designers thought it would be useful to have built into the Z80 chip.

Because the CPU has to be able to keep track of all its calculations on its fingers and toes, there are only two kinds of numbers the CPU can deal with:

- * one handed numbers - ie numbers you can count on one hand
- * two handed numbers - ie numbers you can count off on two hands.

You may find this difficult to believe, but the CPU cannot deal with numbers larger than those it can count on two hands!

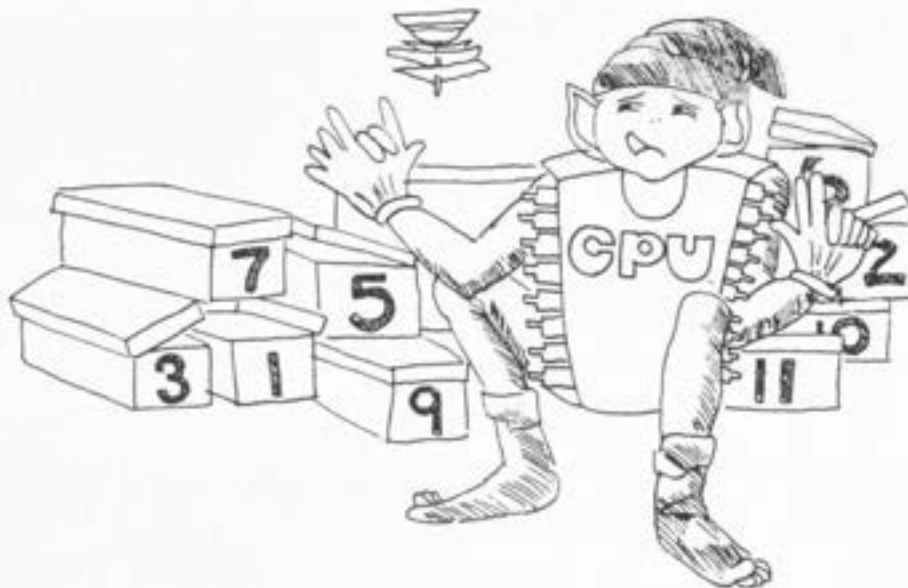
The types of instructions the CPU can perform are also very limited:

- * counting off numbers on one hand
- * counting off numbers on two hands
- * adding, subtracting, increasing, decreasing, or comparing one handed numbers
- * adding, subtracting, increasing or decreasing two handed numbers
- * various manipulations on one handed numbers - eg making the number negative
- * making the CPU skip to another part of the program
- * trying to communicate one handed numbers to and from the outside world.

I am sure you will agree that this is a very limited set of instructions, and yet using only such limited instructions you can get the CPU to play chess, or to work out your wages!

Note that even such simple instructions as multiplication do not exist! If you need to multiply two numbers in machine language you have to write a program to do so.

This is why writing programs in machine language is so much slower than writing programs in BASIC - you can only do things in tiny little steps.



SUMMARY:

Registers

The CPU has a number of registers it can use for calculations. Eight of these can be thought of as the CPU's hands, and two of these can be thought of as the CPU's feet. Each 'hand' has eight 'fingers', while each 'foot' has 16 'fingers'.

Memory Locations

The CPU can transfer information from its hands into or from any other other hand, and into or from memory.

Specific memory locations can be set aside by the programmer to represent specific information.

The Stack

The CPU can use the stack to transfer information the programmer may wish to store temporarily. Information is transferred to the stack by PUSHing the information on, and is retrieved by POPping the information off.

Possible Instructions

The kinds of instructions the CPU is able to perform are only the simplest type of information transfer and simple arithmetic calculations. All programs must be made up of series of these simple instructions.

The Way Computers Count

We mentioned previously that the CPU was able to count to 255 using only eight fingers. How can this be when with 10 fingers we can only manage to count to 10?



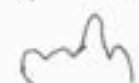

It is certainly not because computers are smarter (they aren't) but because the CPU is more organised in its information than we are: why should raising your index finger have the same value (= '1') as having your little finger raised?

It seems obvious that if you so wished you could represent two different numbers in this way.

It is very much the same sort of thing as realising that the number 001 is different from the number 100. The plain truth is that humans are not very efficient in the use of fingers for counting.

The CPU understands that not having a finger is of some information and that which finger is raised is a valuable piece of information.

With only two fingers it is possible to devise a way to count from 0 to 3, as follows:

	00 = 0	We can indicate not having a finger raised as '0', and having a finger raised as '1'.
	01 = 1	
	10 = 2	This does not mean 11 = 3
	11 = 3	It means we chose to let the representation 11 (or two fingers) have the value 3.

We could just as easily have chosen a different representation.

There is a direct relationship between this and binary Representation. The CPU's fingers are locations in memory and they can be made to indicate on an off (or '0' and '1' as convention dictates).

If we added a third finger to our example above we could represent all the numbers from 0 to 7. Three fingers for all the numbers from 0 - 7!

Four fingers would be able to represent all the numbers from 0 to 15! If you don't believe it, it would be a good exercise to write out all the possibilities for four fingers being raised.

In order to simplify the notation of such numbers, and to avoid

confusion in trying to write down the number eleven as opposed to indicating that two bits were set, a universal convention has been adopted:

The numbers 10 - 15 are indicated by the letters A - F.

Decimal	10 =	A
	11 =	B
	12 =	C
	13 =	D
	14 =	E
	15 =	F

This means we write the numbers from 0 to 15 decimal as

0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D E F

Simple, isn't it?

This way of treating numbers is called the HEXADECIMAL FORMAT.

To prevent confusion, some people write "H" after a hexadecimal number (eg. 10H). The "H" has no value, but serves to remind the user of the hexadecimal convention.

In machine language programming, it is CONVENIENT to deal with numbers in hexadecimal format.

This is only a convention and if you so wished you could write all your instruction in normal decimal format. It is convenient for us to use the hexadecimal format because:

1. It is easy to convert from this form to binary, which tells us which bit (or finger) is doing what.
2. It gives us an easy means of seeing whether numbers are one handed or two handed - ie 8-bit or 16-bit.
3. It standardises all numbers to sets of 2-digit numbers. (We will elaborate on this)
4. It is the common convention and familiarity with hexadecimal will allow you to read other books and manuals more easily.
5. As the CPU is designed to process information represented by binary numbers which are cubersome for humans to read, we need a representation which is more easily readable.

But it is only a convention and not a sacred rule.

The hexadecimal system, as we mentioned earlier, lets us represent the numbers 0 to 15 using only 4 bits. Any 8-bit memory location

or 8-bit register can therefore be described by two sets of 4 bits.

(This is the same as saying that any combination of 10 fingers can be represented by two hands of 5 fingers each.)

THE REASON WE ARE CONCERNED WITH 8-BIT MEMORY LOCATIONS AND 8-BIT REGISTERS IS THAT THIS IS THE STRUCTURE OF THE ZX SPECTRUM.

All memory locations and all single registers have 8 bits. This is not hard to understand - it's like saying all humans have 5 fingers on each hand.

Taking things one step at a time, let us become familiar with 4 fingers first:



$$\begin{aligned} 1\ 1\ 1\ 1 &= 2^{**3} + 2^{**2} + 2^{**1} + 2^{**0} \\ &= 8 + 4 + 2 + 1 \\ &= \text{Decimal } 15 \\ &= \text{F (in hexadecimal notation)} \end{aligned}$$

For those of you with a mathematical bent, you may notice that the number each finger represents is multiplied by 2 as you go to the left. If we number the fingers:



then the value of each finger is '2 to the power N' where N is the finger number. Let's call a 4-finger hand a "handlet" (just as a small cigar is a cigarette?)

Exercise:

What decimal and hexadecimal value do the following arrangement of bits (or fingers) represent?

Decimal	Hexadecimal
---------	-------------

0010	
0110	
1001	
1010	
1100	

It is important for you to become familiar with the hexadecimal convention, and if you had difficulty with the concept, do read the

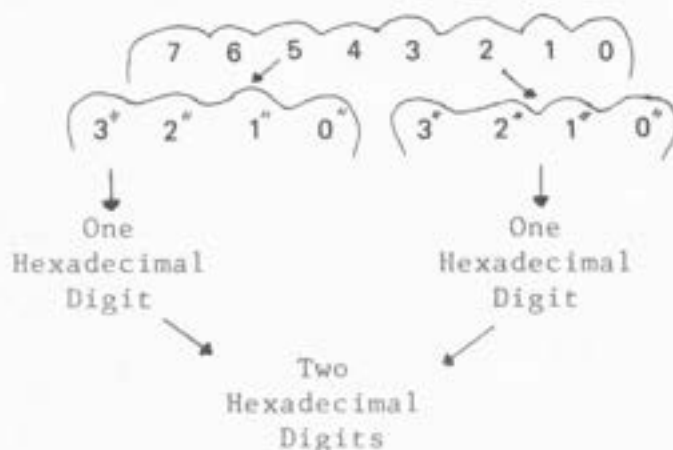
last few pages again before going on.

Let us examine what happens if we want a number greater than 15? Say 16? We would use the next finger on the left, as:



The reason we write the number as 10H is that we divide the hand into two "4-bit handlets". We can therefore easily denote each handlet by one of the hexadecimal numbers representing 0 to 15 (0-9 & A-F).

In this way any 8-bit hand can be written as exactly two hexadecimal handlets:



The "handlet" on the left indicates 16 times as much as the "handlet" on the right. This is much the same way as in decimal notation, the digit in the "tens" column is worth ten times as much as the digit in the "ones" column.

We convert numbers in decimal format such as 15 automatically to:

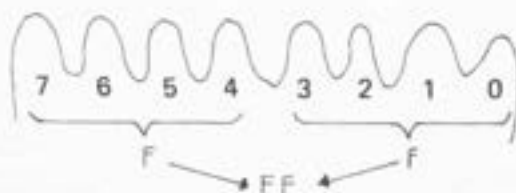
$$15 = (1 \times 10) + 5$$

This is so automatic that we don't even think about it.

It is exactly the same thing in hexadecimal notation. To convert back from hexadecimal notation to decimal notation, we multiply the hexadecimal number on the left "handlet" by 16. Using the example above:

$$\begin{aligned} 10H &= (1 \times 16) + 0 \\ &= 16 \text{ Decimal} \end{aligned}$$

This is how we are able to count to 255 using only 8 fingers. The maximum is obtained when all fingers are held up:



$$\begin{aligned}
 FFH &= (F \times 16) + F \\
 &= (15 \times 16) + 15 \text{ (in decimal)} \\
 &= 255 \text{ (Decimal)}
 \end{aligned}$$

The smallest number is when no fingers are held up:

$$00H = 0 \text{ Decimal}$$

Note that all numbers, from the smallest to the largest require 2 and only 2 digits to define the number.

Try out for yourself any combination of 8 digits and see if you can convert it to hexadecimal notation, and then into decimal notation.

It may seem a little strange and awkward at first, but you will soon get the hang of it.

Also that when you count in hexadecimal, you do the same as in decimal:

Decimal: 26 27 28 29 30 etc.

Hexadecimal: 26 27 28 29 2A 2B 2C 2D
 2E 2F 30 etc.....

The values of the numbers in the decimal and hexadecimal series above have different values of course. Note that after 29H you get 2AH, not 30H!

The following BASIC program will enable you to input to your Spectrum a decimal number and convert it to a hexadecimal value.

```
100 REM decimal to hexadecimal conversion
110 PRINT "Please input decimal value."
120 INPUT n : PRINT n
130 LET S$ = "" 135 LET n2 = INT (n/16)
140 LET n1 = INT (n - n2*16)
150 LET S$ = CHR$ ((n1 (= 9) * (n1 + 48) +
    (n1 > 9)*(55 + n1)) + S$
160 IF n2 = 0 THEN PRINT : PRINT "HEXADECIMAL = 0"; S$
    ; " H": FOR I = 1 TO 200: NEXT I: RUN
170 LET n = n2: GO TO 135
```

Try converting the following numbers to their hexadecimal value and use the BASIC program to test your answer.

- i. 16384 memory address of the start of Spectrum display file
- ii. 22528 memory address of the start of Spectrum attribute file
- iii. 15360 memory address of the start of Spectrum character set
- iv. 15616 address of the start of ASCII characters in Spectrum

SUMMARY:

Decimal

The decimal notation is a convention of counting numbers in groups of ten units at a time. These are represented by 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9.

Hexadecimal

The hexadecimal notation is a convention of counting numbers in groups of 16 units at a time. These are represented by 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, A, B, C, D, E, and F.

Sometimes an H is added at the end of a hexadecimal number to remind us it is written in this format. For example, 1800H.

8-Bit Memory Locations

The ZX Spectrum is designed so that each memory location has 8 bits ('fingers'). Each memory location can store a number from 0 to 255 decimal. This is conveniently represented in the hexadecimal format as a two digit number.

How Information is Represented

There is a big difference in information representation between human and computer. Human information is mainly composed of numbers and characters (alphanumeric information), whereas all information in a computer is stored as groups of bits.

A bit stands for Binary digit ("0" or "1"); in the Z80A microprocessor, these bits are structured in groups of eight. A group of eight bits is called a BYTE.

This way of representing information using binary digits is called the BINARY FORMAT. This is the structure of the language which the Z80 and most microcomputer CPUs talk.

Basically, there are two types of information represented inside the Spectrum. The first one is the PROGRAM. The second one is the DATA on which the program will operate, which may include numbers or alphanumeric text. We will thus discuss below these three representations: PROGRAM, NUMBERS, and ALPHANUMERICS.

Program Representation

A PROGRAM is a sequence of instructions to the CPU to perform a particular task which can be broken down into a number of "sub-tasks".

In the Z80, all instructions are represented internally as single or multiple bytes. Instructions represented by one byte are called the "SHORT instructions". Longer instructions are represented by two or more bytes.

Because the Z80 is an eight-bit microprocessor, it can only deal with one byte at a time, and if it requires more than one, it fetches bytes successively from memory. Therefore, a single-byte instruction will generally be executed more quickly than a two- or three-byte instruction. Thus, as a general rule, it is always more efficient to write your machine language program using single-byte instructions where possible.

You can turn to the instruction set table in the Appendix and have a look at the SHORT and LONG instructions. Don't worry if you can't understand them, we will discuss each instruction in depth later on.

Numeric Data Representation

* Integer Representation

We discussed earlier that because of the way the Z80 is designed we cannot have a number such as 11.53. The CPU can only deal in whole numbers. Also, by using only 8 fingers (ie an 8-bit number), we could represent all the numbers in the range 0 to 255.

e.g. decimal 255 is represented by OFFH
the binary representation of which is 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1

But what about negative numbers?

* Signed Integer Representation

Remember one byte is a HAND with eight fingers and a number is represented by holding different fingers up.

Obviously, to represent signed integer in Binary Format, we have to have some way of representing a positive or negative numbers. Let's say that in order to represent a negative number, we adopt the following convention (signed representation):

A NUMBER ON THE CPU'S HAND WILL BE CONSIDERED TO BE A NEGATIVE NUMBER IF THE CPU HOLDS HIS THUMB UP. (in computer terminology, the highest bit - bit 7 is on.)

So we have only seven fingers (bits) left to represent the value of the number. That means the highest number we can have is no longer 255. In fact, half of the numbers which can be held on a single HAND (a single byte) will be negative and half of them will be positive (depending on whether the thumb is up or not).

The total number range possible on one hand if we allow negative numbers will therefore be from -128 to +127. (Note that the total number range that can be represented will still be 256 numbers).

Now comes the crunch: When is a number with the thumb up a large positive number and when is it a negative number?

The answer is whenever you feel like it; You have to make a choice: numbers can either be in the range of 0 to 255 or in the range -128 to +127. They can't be both at the same time! It is up to you, the programmer, to decide which convention you are using at a particular time.

All the instructions will work equally well, whether you choose to let the number contained in the registers or memory be all positive

or positive and negative.

* Choosing a Representation for negative numbers:

We have already decided that holding the thumb up will mean the number is negative, and not holding the thumb up means it is positive. Is this enough?

No. We need to decide which of the 127 possibilities of the remaining 7 fingers will denote -1, which one -2, and so on.

We need a representation of negative numbers, such that when a number is added to its negative we get zero. As an exercise, let's think about the number which when added to 1 gives us zero: (This will obviously be -1, and we already know that the thumb - bit 7 - will be up)

0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1		0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1
1 ? ? ?	? ? ? ?	could it be=)?	1 0 0 0	0 0 0 1
<hr/>			<hr/>	
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0			1 0 0 0 0 0 1 0	

Let's try 1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 - in other words, the same as +1, but with the thumb up. To test if that is -1, let's try adding this value to +1. From above the sum 10000010 is obviously not the right answer! If it was right, the answer would have been 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0. Obviously, we need a number that will take that carry from Bit 0, and convert it to zeros all along.

You can try to do it yourself, and you will see that the only number which will give us the right answer is

1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 (FFH in hexadecimal)

To confirm this:

	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1
	1 1 1 1	1 1 1 1
	<hr/>	
(carry)	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0

Is there a way that we can work out a general rule for the negative of any number from this example? It looks as if though we might have to get the opposite of the number and add one at the end.

Let's try this rule on another number, such as 3, say:

3=	0 0 0 0	0 0 1 1	
opposite	1 1 1 1	1 1 0 0	
add 1 =)	1 1 1 1	1 1 0 1	(FDH)

Let's add to this number to 3 and see what happens:

	0 0 0 0	0 0 1 1	
	1 1 1 1	1 1 0 1	

(carry)	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0	It works!

We have found a way to represent negative numbers!

-01 => FF
-02 => FE
-03 => FD and so on.

The largest positive number is

0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 = 7F => 127 Decimal
and the negative of this is
1 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 = 81 => -127 Decimal

The real test of this rule is to see if by applying the rule to a negative number we get back the positive again!

Let's try it out on -3 which we worked out above is FDH.

Number	1 1 1 1	1 1 0 1	
Opposite	0 0 0 0	0 0 1 0	
Add 1=>	0 0 0 0	0 0 1 1	=> 3

This is therefore a representation that works! We can apply it to get the negative of any number.

16 - bit Negatives

Exactly the same reasoning applies to two handed numbers (16-bit numbers), except that the thumb of only one hand needs to be shown as 'ON' to indicate if the number is negative or not. (ie. bit 7 of the high byte).

Convention:

The computer terminology for this convention is called TWO's COMPLEMENT. You can find 2's complement tables for negative decimal numbers at the Appendix of this book.

Remember that this is only a convention! You still have to decide at all times whether the numbers you are using are meant to designate numbers in the range 0 to 255 or numbers in the range -128 to +127.

Exercise:

- If 127 (0 1 1 1 1 1 1 1) is the highest positive

number which can be represented in this convention,
how would you represent -128?

- ii. Find the highest positive 16-bits (TWO HANDS/BYTES)
and the highest 16-bits negative number?

iii.

Find the 2's complement of the smallest

16-bit negative number 8000H. Why is it 8000H?

Alphanumeric Data Representation

Sometimes, in machine language we do not want the numbers to be instructions for the computer, nor do we want them to be numbers for calculations. We may just want them to represent characters of letters and numbers - eg. the title of your latest program, perhaps called "THE WORLD'S NUMBER 1 PROGRAM".

Our convention to represent alphanumeric data, ie. characters is pretty straightforward: all characters and numbers can be represented on a single hand (ie in an eight-bit code).

In the computer world, there are two standards for alphanumeric characters representation: The ASCII Code, and the EBCDIC Code.

ASCII stands for "American Standard Code for Information Interchange" and is universally used in the microcomputer industry. EBCDIC is a variation of ASCII used by IBM.

In the ZX Spectrum, alphanumeric characters conform to the ASCII standard except for the pound (61H) and copyright (7FH) characters. You can find an ASCII conversion Table in the Appendix. Compare it with the character set table in appendix A of your Spectrum manual pp 183-186.

Try this : PRINT CHR\$ 33
and you will get a "!"; because "!" is
represented internally by 21H.

HELP!: We have just shown that the CPU's hand can be said to show a
----- variety of things:

- It could be - a program instruction to the CPU
- a number in the range 0 to 255
- a number in the range - 128 to + 127
- part of a two handed number
- an alphanumeric character

This is all true, and it is up to you, the programmer, to remember just what it is the CPU's hand is supposed to be holding.

SUMMARY:

Memory Contents

The Spectrum's memory can store programs, numbers, or text, as we desire. There is no way of telling which is which just by examining the contents of a single memory location.

Programs

Program instructions are stored in memory as sequences of bytes. Some instructions require only one byte, while others require up to four bytes.

Numbers

Each memory location can be used to store either positive integer numbers or signed integer numbers (numbers which can be positive or negative), as we choose. The range of numbers is either from 0 to 255 or -128 to +127.

Negative Numbers

A convention has been adopted that when we choose to have memory store a signed (+ or -) number, the following rule shall apply:

If bit 7 is on, the number is negative

If bit 7 is not on, the number is positive

To obtain the negative of any number, get the "2's complement" and add 1.

2's Complement

The 2's complement of any number is its opposite in binary form. Any bit that is on becomes off, and vice versa.

A Look into the CPU

Introduction

We have said that the brain of the Spectrum is the CPU, the Z80A processor. This is a faster version of the Z80 processor produced under a licence from Zilog Inc.

The only difference between the Z80 and Z80A processors is that the former processor is running at a clock speed of 2 Mhz/s (Megahertz per second) while the later processor is running at a clock speed of 3.5 Mhz/s. 'Clock speed' is merely a measure of how fast the CPU is performing its calculations. In the Spectrum, 3.5 million clock pulse signals are generated per second, ie one clock pulse every 0.000000286 of a second.

The fastest instruction the CPU can perform takes up 4 clock pulses, while the slowest requires 21 clock pulses. That means, that even if all instructions performed are the slowest ones, about 160,000 instructions can be performed each second!

A Physical View of The Brain

The processor in the Spectrum is a silicon chip with forty pins numbered from 1 to 40. These pins are the communication lines between the processor and the rest of the computer. For example, the processor draws its power from the power supply through pin 11, gets its clock signals from pin 6, sends addresses in or out through pins 1 to 5 and pins 30 to 40, and sends data in or out through pins 7 to 15 except pin 11. The rest of pins are for control signals communication.

You may find yourself totally lost at this stage. But no need to puzzle, it's really to our advantage that we don't know the internal structure of the machine, and we don't need to know it to use its capabilities. It's just the same as with a calculator. The physical structure of the machine is 'transparent' to the users (in other words we don't see it!). We are only interested in the logical structure of the calculator, or in this case the Z80 chip, and how we can use it to our purposes.

Logically, the Z80 can be divided into five functional parts.

They are

- i. the CONTROL UNIT
- ii. the INSTRUCTION REGISTER
- iii. the PROGRAM COUNTER
- iv. the ARITHMETIC-LOGIC UNIT
- v. the 24 USER-REGISTERS (the usable HANDS and FEET of the CPU)

* CONTROL UNIT

We can see the CONTROL UNIT as a supervisor for the CPU's processing. Its task is to time and coordinate the Input, Processing, and Output of the particular job that the CPU is being asked to perform, whether the instructions come from the ROM program, or from your program.

* INSTRUCTION REGISTER

This is a HAND that the CPU uses to hold the current instruction that it is going to perform. The whole task which comprises a program must reside somewhere in memory - either in the ROM or in the RAM (Random Access Memory). You may recall that a program is a sequence of instructions. Thus, to perform the task, the CONTROL UNIT has to fetch each instruction in turn from the memory (either ROM or RAM) and place it in the INSTRUCTION REGISTER HAND.

* PROGRAM COUNTER

This is really one of the Z80's FEET which tell the CPU where the next part of the program is (the address of the next memory location from which the CONTROL UNIT is going to fetch an instruction). It is like an instructions warehouse manager keeping track of the location of the next instruction to fetch out.

* ARITHMETIC and LOGIC UNIT

This is the calculator inside the CPU. It can perform both arithmetic and logical operations. Out of all the basic arithmetic functions as you and I know them, this unit can only perform simple addition and subtraction, incrementation (adding 1) and decrementation (subtracting 1), but not multiplication or division. The unit can also compare one handed numbers, or perform 'bit' operations such as rotating fingers around, holding specific fingers up or down, etc.

As a byproduct of the calculations the ALU is asked to perform, the calculations usually affect the status of the various FLAGS in the FLAG register. This is discussed in more detail further on.

* USER-REGISTERS

These are the CPU's Hands and Feet, which you, the programmer, can control.

There are twenty four User-registers within the 280 microprocessor - some are HANDs, and some are FEET.

The images we have been building up of hands, feet and boxes make the processes easy to visualise and are a good representation of what is going on, but computer buffs tend to look askance if you say things like "...and then the computer shifted its information from its right hand to its left hand."

We will now give you the proper names for the CPU's hands and feet, so that when faced with that situation, you will be able to say:

"LD B,A"

To start off with, computer buffs refer to the hands and feet of the CPU as "registers".

We mentioned earlier that the CPU has eight hands: these are called A, B, C, D, E, F,In our world, the definition of a hand is something with eight fingers.

The CPU has two feet: these are named IX and IY. The definition of a foot is anything with 16 toes!

The naming of hands and feet is fairly easy to follow because if a register has only one letter in its name then it must be a hand (that is, contains 8 bits), while if it has two letters in its name then it must be a foot (that is, have 16 bits).

Did you notice the smooth transition from fingers and toes to bits? We will have you used to computer terminology in no time.

Actually the remaining two hands for the CPU after D, E, F,are not named "G" and "H" as one would expect but "H" and "L".

The conventional way to represent all these registers is as follows:

A	F
B	C
D	E
H	L
IX	
IY	

Notice that "F" is paired with "A", but after that the rest follow fairly naturally. The reason that registers are paired in this way is that it is sometimes possible to make a foot out of two hands!

After all, if the definition of a foot is something with 16 bits, then maybe we can fake it from time to time and use two 8-bit hands to do the work of a foot. We therefore talk about "register pairs" such as BC, DE, and HL.

The reason the register pair "HL" was called "HL" instead of something like "GH" was to help people remember which of the two registers had the high number and which had the low number.

It's as if though you wished to represent the numbers 0 to 100 on your hands and toes. You can easily set up your fingers to represent the numbers 0 through 10, and similarly with your toes (assuming that you are agile enough). One way you could denote the number 37 in this way would be to count off 3 on your fingers and 7 on your toes. But there has to be some agreement on which is the high number and which is the low number otherwise someone else might think you meant to represent the number 73.

The "H" in "HL" stands for HIGH and the "L" stands for LOW, so there is no chance of confusion - right?

This diagram of register pairs also serves to indicate which register in the other register pairs contains the high number:

B in BC
D in DE

because all the highs and lows are treated in the same order.

The feet (IX and IY) also have a special name: they are called "index registers". This has a lot to do with the fact that they can be used to organise information in much the same way as a book index is organised. Alternatively, you can view them as table pointers.

OK, now that you understand the terminology, here are some special points:

THE ACCUMULATOR (A register)

This 8-bits (single byte) register is the most important register of the Z80. Its name dates back to the early generation of computers when there was only a single register that could be used to 'accumulate' a result.

So, as we have advanced from the early generations of computers, the accumulator continued to be used extensively for logical and arithmetic operations. In fact, most computers are still designed in such a way that many operations can only be performed using the A register.

This is true of the Z80 chip, and the A register is a favoured register. You can think of the A register as being like the CPU's right hand, in the same way that most people can perform some tasks more easily with their right hand than with the left hand.

The Flags:

Please note that "AF" is not usually treated as a register pair. The "F" in this case is used to denote "Flag Register". This is a hand with 8 fingers such that each finger indicates whether a certain condition is met or not met and we will be dealing with this in a separate chapter.

The HL Register Pair:

Of the three register pairs (BC, DE, HL), the HL pair is probably the most important one. Besides giving the user the option of using it as two single registers or as a register pair, the Z80 is designed in such a way that there are certain 16-bit arithmetic operations that can only be performed using the HL register pair.

Because of this particular hardware privilege, general register pair operations usually will be faster using the HL register. This makes HL preferable to use in machine language programming.

Maybe the HL register is the CPU's right foot?

An Alternate Register Set:

I thought that this might be a nice place to mention that the CPU also has a spare set of hands!

Not really so much a spare set of hands (all right, alternate register set, if you want the proper terminology), as a spare set of work gloves.

It's like you had a set of stiff plastic gloves, so stiff in fact that they retained the shape of your hand when you took them off. If you had counted off the number 3 on your hand for example and took off your gloves, then the glove would still retain the shape of a hand with the number 3 counted off!

You can no doubt think of uses for such gloves immediately - you could make a note of a number while wearing one set of gloves, swap gloves and the old number would still be there when you needed it on the other set of gloves!

The other glove is there if you want to use it and it won't forget the impression of your hand when you took it off. Unfortunately you can't just glance down and see what was the number you had retained there. Nor, naturally, can the glove perform any calculations without a hand inside the glove!

You actually have to swap gloves again to be able to use whatever information the gloves retain.

The CPU has a spare set of gloves for each pair of hands (but not for feet - who ever heard of gloves for feet?) but they are not interchangeable between hands, just as you can't put a left glove on a right hand.

The representation of all the registers is now therefore:

A - F	(===)	A' - F'
B - C	(===)	B' - C'
D - E	(===)	D' - E'
H - L	(===)	H' - L'
	IX	
	IY	

Note that the set of gloves you are wearing has the same name as the hand it is for, while the spare set is always indicated with the dash symbol.

The instructions still relate to what the hands are doing, not to which pair of gloves you have on. So although we show the spare set with a dash, there are no instructions such as LD A',1. The CPU only works on your HANDS, not your gloves.

The only instructions involving the alternate register set are of the "swap gloves now" type. For example:

```
1. LD A, (Box #1)      ;Load A with contents of
                        ;Box #1
2. EX AF, AF'          ;Short for exchange -
                        ; ie. swap gloves on AF
                        ;with those of AF'
3. LD A, (Box #2)      ;
4. EX AF, AF'          ; Another exchange
5. LD A, (Box #3)      ;
```

You will note that in the above 5 instructions there are no instructions which have specifically affected the alternate register set but we have without doubt altered their contents.

This example is designed to illustrate the concept of the alternate register set. Try to work out what is happening.

Do you know what will be in register "A" after each instruction?

For simplicity's sake, let's assume that the contents of the three boxes are as follows:

```
(Box #1) = 1
(Box #2) = 2
(Box #3) = 3
```

Then the following is what happens after each instruction:

	Register A	Register A'
1.	1	Not known
2.	Not known	1
3.	2	1
4.	1	2
5.	3	2

Really quite simple, isn't it?

You will find that these EXCHANGE registers are particularly useful when you run out of HANDs, run out of registers and you don't want to spare your hands/feet by storing what is on them onto the STACK or into MEMORY. We will follow through this point later.

Even More Registers?

Yes, there are even more registers, but you will probably not be using these to any great extent.

The STACK POINTER

The STACK POINTER is another foot the CPU has (2-byte addressing register).

It always points to where the pile on the stack has got to. As the stack grows, it grows downward from high memory locations to lower memory locations.

You do not usually have to do anything about the Stack Pointer in Machine Language programming. The CPU looks after it, and updates it every time you do a PUSH or POP.

Note that it is a common mistake to forget to POP back a value that you PUSHed on to the stack. You can be sure that this will cause your program to "CRASH".

The I Register

This is the Interrupt Vector register. In Z80 based systems other than the SPECTRUM this register would normally be used to hold the base address of a table of addresses for handling different responses to an interrupt, for example, Input/Output requests.

However in the SPECTRUM this facility is not used and the I register is involved in generating T.V frame signals. It is unlikely you will ever have to use this register.

The R Register

The R register is the memory-refresh register. It is provided in the Z80 to refresh dynamic memories automatically. As the Z80 processor is doing its job, the information stored in those parts of dynamic memory which haven't been accessed recently will 'leak' away because of a drop of voltage through time. Unless these memory locations are refreshed (recharged), information stored originally will disappear!

The R register serves as a simple counter that is incremented every time a 'memory information retrieval cycle' occurs. The value in the R register thus cycles over and over from 0 to 255.

This can be used by the hardware to ensure that all parts of the memory are 'refreshed'. But don't worry - you never need to know about it. That is something that Mr. Sinclair had to worry about when he designed the Spectrum. We can just make use of his computer without ever worrying about refreshes, etc.

From a programming point of view, you can think of the R register as relating only to hardware and system usage. But sometimes you can use it as a mean of obtaining a random number between 0 and 255. We will demonstrate this usage later.

SUMMARY:

User's Registers

There are eight main 8-bit registers in the CPU (A, F, B, C, D, E, H, L), and two 16-bit registers (IX and IY). Eight-bit registers have only one letter in their name, while 16-bit registers have two letters.

Register Pairs

Six of the eight 8-bit registers can in some circumstances be used in pairs to operate on 16-bit numbers.

These are the BC, DE and HL register pairs. The name HL can serve to remind us which is the High order byte and which the Low order byte.

Preferred Registers

The Z80 CPU is designed in such a way that some 8-bit instructions can only be performed by the A register, while some 16-bit instructions can only be performed by the HL register pair.

Alternate Register Set

The eight main 8-bit registers can be swapped with another 'alternate' set of registers.

The values stored in the main registers are retained by the CPU while the alternate set is being used, but cannot be accessed.

Exchanging the register sets again allows us to operate on the original values again.



This is all very well...

BUT . . . HOW DO I RUN A MACHINE LANGUAGE PROGRAM?
=====

You have probably heard enough about the CPU and hexadecimal notation, and it all seems so irrelevant. It doesn't explain how you actually RUN a machine language program.

The ZX Spectrum is actually running machine language programs all the time! (When it's on). It's just that you are not aware of it. Even when you're not doing anything, just watching the screen, trying to think of what to enter as the first line of your revolutionary BASIC program, the Spectrum computer is busy running under the control of a machine language program.

This program is the one that is stored in the ROM chip and is referred to as 'the operating system'. For example, the part of the program that is running when you're sitting there looking at the screen does the following things:

- Scan the keyboard for entry
- Note that no key has been pressed
- Display the present screen (empty)

Even when you are running a BASIC program, the CPU is still under the instruction of the machine language program. This program is of the 'interpreter' type as we have already explained: it looks at your next BASIC instruction, converts it to machine language, executes that part of the program, and then returns to interpret the next instruction.

All this stops being true when you run your own machine language program!

Total freedom from the operating system! The use of the 'USR' function hands over total control of the CPU to whatever commands you have placed at the USR address. It will interpret whatever it finds there as valid machine language instructions.

This can be pretty terrifying as you could lose everything stored in memory should you lose control. One error, one wrong character, and you will have to turn the Spectrum off and start again from the beginning.

There are no error messages to catch what you have done wrong, no syntax checking for incorrect statements - so if you make the slightest error, the hours of work you put in to enter your program could be lost!

At the end of this book we have included a BASIC program which will allow you to enter and edit machine language programs. Once you have entered this program on your Spectrum, save it on tape as it

is more than likely that you will lose control of your machine language program at least once.

On the other hand do not be afraid to experiment - you cannot damage the computer with any machine language program you enter. The worse that can happen is that you may have to turn your Spectrum off and on again.

We will now just wet your appetite with the very simplest possible machine language program. Load the BASIC "EZ Code Machine Language Editor" found at the back of this book and RUN it.

The program will ask you for a loading address. This is asking you where you will want the machine code to live. With this EZ-Code program, you cannot use an address below 31500, so let's choose 32000. Enter the number 32000 then press (ENTER).

The screen will now show:

Command or Line (###):

This means the program is waiting for you to enter a command or a new line of machine code.

Let's enter "1", then a space, then "c" and then "9". This is like entering a line of BASIC numbered line number 1, but it is a line of machine code. If everything is OK, then press (Enter). The screen should now show you all the lines you have entered:

```
1    c9
```

and at the bottom of the screen the prompt

"Command or Line (###):"

At this stage you do not want to add any more lines, so let us enter a command instead.

Enter the word "dump", and then press (ENTER). What this command does is to dump the machine code in the listing into the address you have specified, namely 32000.

Congratulations: you have just entered a one instruction of machine language program! You can check this was entered correctly by now entering the command "mem", followed by (ENTER). This command allows you to examine memory, and it will ask you for a starting address. Enter 32000 then (ENTER).

You will see the contents of memory locations from 32000 through to 32087. All should show 00, except 32000 which will show C9. Press key "m" to return to the main command input stage.

What the instruction "C9" means is: RETURN!

It's a little like riding a bicycle for the first time: you really want to be let loose on your own, but as soon as you go a little way you want to "return" to the safety of earth (or operating system as the case may be).

Now we run the machine language program. To run any machine language program you have dumped to memory, enter the command "run" followed by (ENTER).

What happened? Why did the screen come up with 32000 at the bottom of the screen? This was the address used as the loading address you used at the start.

Don't forget that the function of "USR" is to execute a machine language subroutine. As part of this function, the value of USR on return from the machine language program you placed in memory will be the value of the BC register pair.

The answer lies in the way the Spectrum operating system (yes the same one) deals with the "USR" function.

When the operating system encounters the "USR" function it loads the address the user specified into the register pair BC - in this case 32000.

The value of "USR", as in

Let A = USR 32000

naturally gave the answer 32000!

This feature of the "USR" function will prove to be a very useful one as it will enable us to monitor what is happening during the running of a machine language program.

Let us enter the following machine language program:

0B
C9

The way to enter this short two-instruction program is as follows:

Enter line 1 0b by entering "1", then space, then "0", then "b", and then press (ENTER). Similarly enter line 2 c9. The listing should show you that you have entered the lines correctly. Enter the command "dump" and then the command "run".

This time the result will be 31999! This is because the instruction "0B" is "DEC BC" (abbreviation for decrease value of BC by 1).

Exercise:

Experiment with instruction that involve BC by looking up such instructions at the table at the back. Can you work out what the abbreviations mean?

Be careful to have the last line of all your programs as "c9". This is the RETURN instruction, and if you forget it, the program will never return.

If that should happen to you, don't worry - your computer has not been damaged. Just turn off the power and reload everything.

Exercise:

You can use the "mem" command to examine any part of memory. Try various addresses where you think you might find something interesting.

How the CPU uses its Limbs

Introduction

We have seen that your ZX Spectrum CPU has twenty four Hands and Feet. Just which operations are allowed and how easy they are for the CPU to perform is the key to machine language programming for your Spectrum.

Imagine for a moment that you are the CPU:

Possibly like most people, you are right handed and there are things you can do with your right hand that you are not quite so adept at with your other hand. There are also certain actions which may be easy to perform one way, but more difficult another way - such as picking something off a high shelf with your left foot and passing it to your right hand is harder to do than if you used your left and right hands.

It's the same in machine language - you can perform some tasks easily one way, with more difficulty another way and it may be impossible a third way. Knowing which combination of actions are allowed is the key to success.

The equivalent hand on the CPU to your right hand is the "A" register. Remember? The ACCUMULATOR, the hand that came into existence as a result of genetic inheritance of early computers.

On the other hand (so to speak if you'll forgive the pun) you can temporarily store what you have in your right hand onto any other hand, foot and vice versa.

Computer boffins refer to this as "Register Addressing".

But this is just a big name for saying transfer information from one register to another.

Other examples would be LD A, B
LD H, E
and so on.

Please note that LD is the mnemonic (abbreviation) for "LOAD" and that when you read assembly language a comma "," is read as "with". Thus we would read

"LD A, B"

as "LOAD A WITH B"

An assembly language instruction is read in the same order as a normal English sentence would be.

There are also other combinations or ways other than register addressing that information can be transferred from one register to another or from register to memory.

The ways you can use the CPU's limbs:

One of the advantages of the Z80 processor is the large number of limbs, and the possible combinations (addressing modes) that are available.

Let's look at the combinations offered by the Z80:

- * Immediate addressing
- * Register addressing
- * Register indirect addressing
- * Extended addressing
- * Indexed addressing

What a list of names? Don't worry, just remain confident and we will step through them one at a time.

The list above does not cover all the possible combinations possible - only those that apply to one-handed numbers!
Let's deal with each one of these possible contortions in turn:

* Immediate Addressing

The general form for this is

LD r, n

(or other instruction - we use LD as an example only)

We use the abbreviation 'r' to mean any 8-bit register and 'n' any 8-bit number.

Immediate addressing is a technique that involves only a single hand. The actual data is a part of the instruction; this means the CPU can execute the instruction IMMEDIATELY it receives the instruction. It doesn't need to look in memory to find more information in order to perform this instruction.

For example, count off 215 on hand "A". I am sure you know enough about the mnemonics by now to be able to write this as:

LD A, 215 or LD A, 0D7H

Once again you can do this with any of the registers, with any numbers whatsoever.

The format for the immediate addressing type of instruction is shown below:

byte 1	instruction (telling the computer what
	code is this instruction)

byte 2 n (the value of the actual
 data for the instruction.)

Since there is one byte allocated for the actual data, the limitation to the size of number you can specify is within the range 0 - 255. If you don't understand this, refer back to chapter on "The Way Computers Count".

We usually use immediate addressing to initialise counters and to define constants needed in calculations.

Immediate addressing is easy to use in machine language programming. However, it is the least flexible of all transactions (addressing modes), since both the register and the data are fixed at the time of writing a program. The equivalent BASIC instruction would be

LET A = 5

Obviously we need this kind of instruction, but we couldn't write entire programs this way!

Immediate addressing is convenient but does not solve any major problems.

But at least we're starting to get someplace: we as programmers can now specify which number gets loaded onto which registers.

* Register addressing

We dealt with this mode briefly earlier. The general format is

LD r, r
(or other instructions)

This technique only involves two Hands; in short, this is passing information from one hand to another.

The CPU will allow information passing between any two hands except the "F" hand (which we should not think of as a hand at all. It is the 'FLAG' register and does not store numbers in the normal sense).

Register address instructions only need one byte.

Instructions of this type are not only short (One byte), they are faster as well. The time needed to execute them is the time taken for 4 clock pulses, or less than 1 microsecond on the Spectrum.

There is a 'rule' in writing machine language programs that hand to hand transactions (register to register transfers) should always be used when possible to improve program efficiency in time and storage.

* Register indirect addressing

```
LD (rr), A    or    LD A, (rr)
LD (HL), n
```

This powerful type of instruction causes the transfer of data between the CPU and a memory location pointed to by the contents of one of the 16-bit register pairs (Feet).

Register indirect addressing is faster than ordinary indirect addressing, since the CPU need not fetch the address from memory.

However, we must load the register originally, and so register indirect addressing is only advantageous when the program uses the same or neighboring address many times.

```
For example,  LD HL,SHAPE    ;load HL with start of
                                shape database
              LD A,(HL)      ;Retrieve a data
              INC HL         ;move pointer along
              continue LOOP
                                until shape finished
```

* Extended Addressing

```
LD A, (nn)    or    LD (nn),A
```

Now we are looking at how to store and restore information from and to your Hand and Feet from memory.

In Extended addressing, the instruction from the program supply the CPU with an address specified by two bytes.

If the transaction is to and from the accumulator, information transfer will only affect the content of memory referred to by the two-byte integer.

If transaction is to and from a register pair, both the contents of memory location referred to by the two-byte integer and the next memory location will be affected.

The format of this type of instruction is:

byte 1	op-code
byte 2	(possible additional op-code)
byte 3	low order value of the 16-bits integer value
byte 4	high order value of that integer value

Now this is the way the program can read the memory into the user

registers. Again, it requires an absolute address; in other words, the resulting program using this type of addressing may not be relocatable except when the absolute address the instruction is referring to is relocatable.

```
eg. SHAPE  DB      n,n,n,...    ;shape data base
          .
          .
          LD      A,(SHAPE)    ;load first byte of shape
                               in accumulator
```

* Indexed addressing

```
LD  r,  (IX/IY + d)    or    LD  (IX/IY + d),  r
                        (or other instructions)
```

This type of transaction involves a Foot of the CPU, the IX or IY index register.

The CPU adds the contents of the index register to the address supplied with the instruction in order to find the effective address.

This is one of the instruction type in Z80 that has 16-bit opcode. Another common 16-bit instruction type is the Block Load instructions eg. LDIR (Load increment and repeat).

One typical usage of this type of addressing technique is to perform Table operations.

The Index Registers can be used as pointer to the start of a table of data. A displacement value is supplied in the instruction to determine the address of the desired entry of the table the program want to refer to.

```
eg.      LD  IX, TABLESTART    ;initialise pointer to
                                ;start of table
      LD  A,  (IX + 3)          ;refer to the third byte
                                ;from the start of the
                                ;table
```

The format of instructions of this type is:

```
byte 1      (op-code)
byte 2      (op-code)
byte 3      d                ;displacement integer d
```

The number 'd' is an 8-bit number which has to be specified together with the instruction and can not be a variable. ie. the range of addressing is limited from -128 to 127 from the

address pointed to by the index register.

Indexed addressing is slower because the CPU must perform an addition in order to obtain the effective address. Yet indexed addressing is much more flexible since the same instruction can handle all the elements in an array or table.



SUMMARY:

There are many ways that the CPU can fetch 8-bit information or transfer it from 8-bit registers to memory:

- Immediate addressing
Defining in the program the number to be transferred to any register.
- Register addressing
From any register to any other register
- Register indirect addressing
Either using BC or DE to specify the address, and A to hold the number to be transferred.
Or using HL to specify the address and defining the number in the program
- Extended addressing
Specifying the address in the program and using A to hold the 8-bit number
- Indexed addressing
Using IX or IY to specify the start of a table in memory, and any register to hold the 8-bit number. The displacement from the start of the table must be specified in the program.
The number to be transferred to memory can also be specified in the program if desired.

These addressing modes are the only modes of transferring information to and from memory. No other combinations are allowed.

Instructions For One-Handed Loading Operations

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on flags						
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H	
LD Register, Register	1	4	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD Register, Number	2	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD A, (Address)	3	13	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (Address), A	3	13	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD Register, (HL)	1	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD A, (BC)	1	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD A, (DE)	1	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (HL), Register	1	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (BC), A	1	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (DE), A	1	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD Register, (IX + d)	3	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD Register, (IY + d)	3	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (IX + d), Register	3	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (IY + d), Register	3	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (HL), Number	2	10	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (IX + d), number	4	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	
LD (IY + d), number	4	19	-	-	-	-	-	-	

Flags notation:

indicates flag is altered by operation
 0 indicates flag is set to 0
 1 indicates flag is set to 1
 - indicates flag is unaffected

Counting off Numbers on One Hand

Since everything in the Spectrum CPU is designed around 8-bit hands or 8-bit memory locations, it is obviously of major importance to learn how to count off numbers on one's hands.

We discussed in the previous chapter some of the ways we can transfer information from hand to hand. We will now deal with each one of these methods in more detail. You may recall one as being called register addressing.

As we said, that is just a big name for saying transfer information from one register to another.

Examples are:

```
LD A,B
LD H,E
and so on.
```

Remember the terminology involved: "LD" means "load", "," means "with", and the mnemonic (abbreviation) instruction is read in the same order as an english sentence.

We would thus read out loud something like:

```
LD A,B
```

as "load A with B". The next example would be read as "load H with Z".

We can swap from one hand to any other hand as we mentioned earlier. Apart from one exception (the Flags register, which is not like the other registers), you can manipulate any hand to any other hand. Even the seemingly stupid instruction "LD A, A" is permitted!

A short shorthand of this is "LD r,r" where "r" represents any 8-bit register except "F".

OK: We now know we can shuffle information between hands, but that's not going to do us much good without some original information on those hands.

The second way that we can count off numbers on our hands is for us to specify how many we want the CPU to count off on which hand!

For example, count off 215 on hand "D". I am sure you know enough about the mnemonics by now to be able to write this as:

```
LD D, D7
```

(D7 is the hexadecimal representation of 215).

You may recall this was called immediate addressing. (Pretty

obvious, isn't it?).

Once again you can do this with any of the registers, with any numbers whatsoever. The limitation being of course the size of the number you can specify with 8 bits: 0 - 255.

A short shorthand of this is "LD r,n" where "r" indicates any register and "n" any number. The previous convention of one letter implies 8-bits still applies.

Now we're starting to get someplace: we can now specify which numbers get loaded onto which registers and we can spin them around from hand to hand. But we still haven't learnt how to put any of these numbers away into memory locations, and there are only so many registers!

We showed you very briefly an example of "external addressing" when we were doing the time difference exercise:

```
LD A, (Box #3)
```

The general mnemonic for this is:

```
LD A, (nn)
```

Don't forget that in our shorthand the brackets imply "the contents of".

Note two things about this:

1. You can only do it with Register A
2. You have to supply the number of the box as a two handed (16-bit) number.

The reverse instruction is also valid. This is one thing you will notice about the Z80 - there is symmetry about the instruction set:

```
LD (nn),A
```

Do notice that these instructions only apply to Register "A" -- there are of course other instructions for the other registers but none quite as clear as this one. It's the dominant hand concept again.

Let us pause here for a nanosecond and consider what these two instructions actually mean and do for us.

In the first place, the number range that can be defined by a two handed number (nn) is from 0 - 65,535. This is 64K, and means that the maximum memory that can be accessed by this instruction is only 64K! This means that all the memory - ROM, program, display, and free memory - have to fit within 64K. On a "16K Spectrum" there is actually 16K used by the ROM and 16K of RAM making a total of 32K. The "16K" refers to the RAM part only. On the "48K Spectrum", the same 16K of ROM is present plus 48K of RAM making a total of 64K. It is not possible therefore for the Z80 to access more memory than

is available on a 48K Spectrum.

The instruction "LD A,(nn)" - which is read as "Load A with the contents of location nn" - is a very powerful instruction. It enables us to "read" the contents of any memory location, whether in ROM, or RAM.

You can use this instruction to explore to your heart's desire, even to a location where there is no memory - eg to try to see what is beyond the 32K memory even if you do not have additional memory. You will be surprised - it is not all zeros!

The reverse instruction "LD (nn),A" - which is read as "Load the contents of memory location nn with A" - will attempt to write to any memory location as well, but will be restricted by the physical limitations:

You can't write to a location that can't store that information, such as in non-existent memory beyond the size of your system.

One of the limitations of this instruction is that we have to know at the time of writing the program which memory location we wish to examine or write into. The abbreviation "nn" means a definite number - eg. 17100 - and not a variable.

You can't use this instruction in the machine language equivalent of a "For - Next" loop. The main use for this instruction is therefore for setting aside particular memory locations as variable storage.

```
eg. define 32000 = speed
          32001 = height
          32002 = fuel left
```

in a lunar lander type program.

You could therefore plan a program where you got the fuel left, decreased it, and stored the new amount of fuel back into that location. You will know at the time of writing your program the address of that memory location which serves to act as a stroehouse for that information.

Let us be clear about this. Location 32002 is not a variable. It is only a memory location which you use to store information.

When writing your assembly language program you would therefore write something like

```
LD A,(Fuel)
```

and when you or the assembler program got to specifying the actual machine code for this instruction you would replace "fuel" by the hexadecimal address of the memory location you specified.

But what if we don't know the exact address of the memory location where the information we seek is? Suppose we can only calculate

where that information is going to be? Because we need 16-bits to specify the address of any memory location, we would need to store it in a 16-bit register: this means one of the register pairs BC, DE, or HL, or one of the index registers IX or IY.

One way we can do this is to have one of the register pair contain the address of the memory location. Because the register contains the information and because we don't have the address directly we call this form of addressing register indirect addressing.

The mnemonic abbreviations for these are

```
LD r,(HL)
LD A,(BC)
LD A,(DE)
```

The English reading of these instructions is

```
"Load the register with the contents of the memory
location pointed to by HL"
"Load A with the contents of the memory location
pointed to by BC"
"Load A with the contents of the memory location
pointed to by DE".
```

Note that by using "HL" as the pointer to our memory location we can load to any register - even H or L, as strange as that may sound - but that using BC or DE we can only load into the A register.

This is because the HL register pair is the favoured register pair in the same way that the A register is the favoured single register.

Once again there is a symmetry to these instructions and we can store information into memory locations in a similar way:

```
LD (HL),r
LD (BC),A
LD (DE),A
```

This is still called "Register indirect addressing" whichever direction the information flows in.

Alternatively we could use the index registers IX and IY to point to the memory location.

The short shorthand of these instructions is:

```
LD r,(IX + d)
LD r,(IY + d)
```

"r" is again any register, and "d" is the "displacement" from the address pointed to by IX or IY. (Don't get the use of "d" confused - we don't mean register "D" but d = displacement)

The number "d" is a one handed number (8-bit number) which has to be specified at the time of programming and cannot be a variable. This is the weakness of this particular instruction and means that its use is usually limited to reading and writing tables containing data.

The symmetrical instruction is also available:

```
LD (IX + d),r
LD (IY + d),r
```

If this particular mode of addressing sounds a little complicated, don't worry: you are unlikely to need it in your first few programs.

The Z80 chip used in the Sinclair computers is nothing if not versatile, and you can combine some of the ways of loading numbers we described above.

For example, you can combine immediate addressing (ie. specifying the number you want loaded) with external addressing (ie. specifying the address to be loaded by using a register pair).

This is called - surprise, surprise - "Immediate External Addressing".

Unfortunately you can only use the HL register pair and the short shorthand is therefore:

```
LD (HL),n
```

This is useful as you can directly fill a memory location without first having to load that value in a register.

A similar combination is possible with the index registers, called "Immediate Indexed Addressing".

This is of more limited use, and the abbreviated form for these instructions are:

```
LD (IX + d),n
LD (IY + d),n
```

Using These Instructions in a Machine Language Program

Let's try to put some of these "LD" instructions into practice.

We know from the previous chapters that after returning from a 'USR' machine language program the value of the 'USR' is the contents of BC. Let's run the following program:

(Load and RUN the EZ Code Machine Language Editor first, and set the Loading address to 32000)

```
1      0e 00
2      c9
```

Now use the DUMP command to place this code into memory.

From now on, we will no longer be giving you such explicit instructions on loading and running machine language programs, as it is a cumbersome method and does not give you any additional understanding into the point of the program.

We will assume that by now you have enough familiarity with the BASIC "EZ Code Machine Language Editor" and with the tables at the back of this book to be able to enter a program. We will therefore be showing all of our programs as follows:

```
OE      00      LD C,0
C9              RET
```

This notation gives you the machine code on the left side and the Z80 assembly mnemonics in the right hand column. It also indicates very clearly which instructions require only a single byte (such as RETurn) and which instructions require 2 bytes, etc. (you will remember that some instructions on the Z80 can take up to 4 bytes!)

The other point is that we shall try to make all our programs independent of origin (where the program starts in memory) so that it does not matter what you specify as your loading address.

Nonetheless remember that these programs can be entered with the "EZ Code Machine Language Editor" program at the back of the book or any other loading program you may design yourself.

Before running this machine language program (you must "dump" the code into memory and then use the "run" command in the EZ Code program) what would you expect the result to be?

The program sets the "c" register in the register pair BC to zero, and you know that BC starts off with the address of the program, which is 32,000.

Will be answer be A. 0000
 B. 32000
 C. 31896

Now run the program. Was the answer what you expected it to be?

If you are unclear about why the answer was what it was, go back and reread the chapter on "The Way Computers Count".

Now try running the following program:

```
06 00 LD B,0
0E 00 LD C,0
C9 RET
```

This will give you the expected result of 0 as $BC = 0$ (both registers B and C have been set to 0).

Exercise:

You might like to try a few fancy tricks, such as loading A with a number, transferring to L, setting H to 0, and so on.

Exercise:

The attribute file starts at address 5800H. We can set HL to point to the attribute file by the following program:

```
26 58 LD H,58H
2E 00 LD L,0
```

This means that you can now change the colours in the display by using the LD (HL),n command.

The structure of the attribute file is described in the Spectrum manual. Let us set the first character to ink red, paper white, flash on. This is

1 0 1 1 1 0 1 0 = BAH

so the next line of the program will read

```
36 BA LD (HL),BAH
```

Now you must never forget to return from the machine language program, so the last line must be

```
C9 RET
```

RUN this machine language program. Did it work?

Flags and Their Uses

Flags are those nice buntings you can wave on state occasions..... - wrong!

In machine language, the word "flag" implies "indicator". A flag is something you put up if you wish to indicate to someone else that a certain condition exists.

The obvious parallel is in boating where you run up a flag to indicate distress, country, piracy or whatever.

The reason the designers of the Z80 (and most CPU designers) use flags in their machine language is to give the programmer information about the status of the number in the CPU's dominant hand (the 'A' register) or information about the last calculation just performed.

You will remember that one of the CPU's registers is dedicated to be a flags register - the 'F' register. You may also have noticed at the start of the last chapter a table summarising the various instructions to be discussed in that chapter, and that part of that table was devoted to the effect each instruction would have on the flags. (Fortunately none of the instructions discussed in the last chapter affected any of the flags.)

The flag whose functioning is easiest to understand is the Zero Flag.

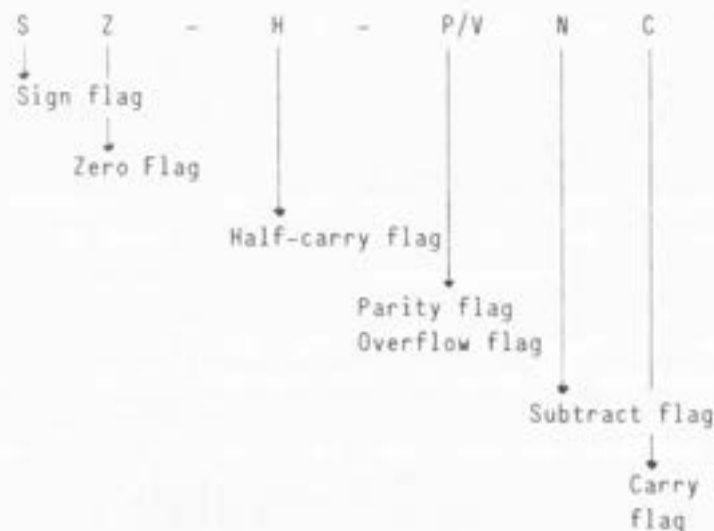
This flag will be run up the flag-pole if the contents of the 'A' register is zero.

There are many important decisions which will depend on whether 'A' is zero. Note that the zero flag is either on or off. You can't have an in-between result (shades of 'a little pregnant') so that you would only need one bit to define the zero flag.

The same is true for all the other flags as well. They are either on or off and require only one bit.

The Different Kinds Of Flags

The "F" register is a regular 8-bit register and could therefore accommodate 8 different flags. In practice however the designers could only think of 6 flags!



Actually the designers thought of seven flags, but decided that one register could serve as both flags: the parity/overflow flag.

Let us now look at each of these flags in detail:

Zero Flag:

This is the flag we have already discussed above. Its application is obvious, and the flag is usually set after an arithmetic operation as it serves to indicate the contents of the 'A' register.

Note carefully however that it is possible to have the 'A' register contain 0 and for the zero flag not be set. This could easily happen by using the

`LD A,0`

instruction. We mentioned above that none of the one-handed (8-bit) load instructions have any effect on any of the flags. The zero flag would NOT be set yet A would contain zero.

The zero flag is also set if the result of the "rotate and shift" group of instructions results in a zero.

As well, the zero flag is the only visible result of some testing instructions, such as the "bit testing" group of instructions. In those cases the zero flag is put on if the bit tested is zero.

Sign Flag:

The sign flag is very similar to the zero flag and operates on very much the same set of instructions (with the major point of departure being the "bit testing" group where the concept of a

negative bit is somewhat meaningless in any case).

Carry Flag:

This is one of the more important flags available in assembly language, for without it the results of assembly language arithmetic would be totally meaningless.

The point to remember is that assembly language instructions always refer to either one-handed (8-bit) or two-handed (16-bit) numbers.

This means that the numbers we are dealing with can be either:

8-bit ==> 0 - 255
16-bit ==> 0 - 65535

or if you include carry,

8-bit ==> 0 - 256
16-bit ==> 0 - 65536

Consider the situation where we carry out the following subtraction

 200
- 201

Result = 255 !!!

This is a direct consequence of only having a limited number range available, and the same thing can obviously happen with 16-bit numbers.

We've already discussed that you can only count to 255 on one hand. What happens if a register is already showing 255 and you add 1? You might like to think of the register as operating the same way as the distance meter of your car. Once you have reached the maximum, it 'clocks' over and begins counting from zero again.

In the same way, if the register or car meter shows all zeros, and you turn it backwards, you will get the highest value showing, or 255 on an 8-bit register.

This is why the result of 200 - 201 gives 255. If we were car dealers we would obviously like an indication that the meter has clocked over, whether in a forward direction - in which case the car has travelled further than it seems - or a backwards direction - in which case the meter has been tampered with.

This kind of indicator exists in machine language programming and is called the carry flag. Fortunately we do not need to worry about registers being tampered with.

We have seen that the carry flag can be set by subtractions if there is an 'underflow'. The carry flag can also be set by addition operations if there should be an 'overflow'.

It is therefore convenient to think of the carry bit as the 9th bit of the 'A' register:

Number	Carry bit	Number in bit form
132	-	1 0 0 0 0 1 0 0
+ 135	-	1 0 0 0 0 1 1 1
-----		-----
267	1	0 0 0 0 1 0 1 1

But as we do not have 9 bits, the 'A' register would contain the number CBH (Decimal 11) and the carry would be on (ie. = 1).

You can see that on subtraction borrowing from a 9th bit would leave a '1' there as well.

Using Flags in the

Machine Language Equivalent of "If ...Then..."

In BASIC we have the ability to construct 'IF ... THEN' situations such as

```

      If A=0 then.....
where what follows can be 'Let....'
                           or 'Goto...'
                           or 'Gosub..'

```

Exactly the same kind of decision can be programmed in machine language (except for the 'Let...'). Instead of saying "If A=0", we merely look at the zero flag: if it is on, then we know A=0.

The three flags we have been considering to date are in the main the only ones which allow us to make a choice in the next instruction to be executed.

The format of such instruction is as follows:
For example:

JP cc, End

where 'JP' is the mnemonic for 'jump' and 'end' is a convenient label.

The instruction is read in English as "jump on condition cc to End".

The condition "cc" could be any of:

Z (= Zero)
NZ (= Not zero)
P (= Positive)
M (= Minus)
C (= Carry set)
NC (= No carry)

The other three flags tend not to be of so much use in every day programming. They are:

Parity/Overflow Flag:

This flag acts as the parity flag for some instructions, and as the overflow flag on others, but there is rarely any confusion as the two types of operations do not commonly occur together.

The parity side of it comes into effect during logical operations and is set if there is an even number of set bits in the result. We deal with this in greater detail in the chapter on logical operations.

The overflow is a warning device that tells you that the arithmetic operation you have just performed may not fit into the 8-bits. Rather than actually telling you that the result needed a 9th bit, this tells you that the 8th bit changed as a result of the operation!

In the example above, adding 132 and 135, the 8th bit was '1' prior to the addition and '0' afterwards, so that the overflow would have been set. But the overflow would also be set by adding:

64	0 1 0 0	0 0 0 0
+ 65	0 1 0 0	0 0 0 1
---	-----	-----
129	1 0 0 0	0 0 0 1

Subtraction Flag:

This flag is set if the last operation was a subtraction!

Half-Carry Flag:

This flag is set in a manner similar to the carry flag but only in the case of an overflow or borrow from the 5th bit instead of from the 9th bit!

Both the subtract flag and the half-carry flag are of use only in "Binary coded decimal" arithmetic, and we deal with these flags in the chapter on "BCD Arithmetic".

(00-000) 000 000 000 000 000 000

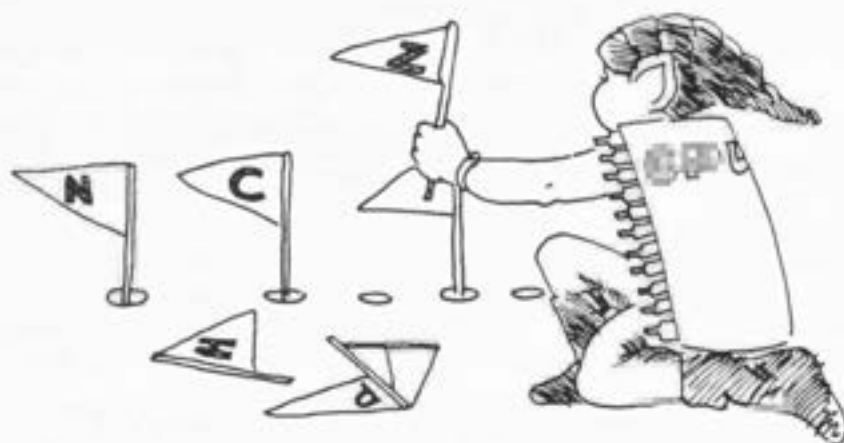
instructions.

Off. The six bits representing these flags are six of the eight bits in the F register. The other two bits are unused.

The conditions indicated by the various flags are

Carry
Zero
Parity or Overflow
Sign
Negate
Half Carry

Not all instructions affect each flag. Some affect all flags, some only specific flags, while others have no effect on the flags.



Counting Up and Down

In the last chapter we examined the concept of flags, and in the chapter before we found out how the CPU is able to load any desired numbers onto its fingers and toes.

Let us now examine the simplest possible way to manipulate numbers on one's fingers: we can increase the number represented on our fingers or we can decrease the number represented.

This is pretty rudimentary arithmetic, but it gets beyond loading specific numbers onto your fingers. The action of counting up is essentially: whatever number you have on your fingers, increase it by one.

This can be used in such ordinary situations as census taking or monitoring the traffic at a particular intersection.

Counting Up:

It is possible on the Z80 to increase the count on the fingers of every single hand the CPU has. This is what we mean by the general mnemonic:

INC r

"INC" is read in English as "increase" and is therefore fairly self-explanatory.

It is also possible to increase the count held on the toes of any of the feet (including the register pairs, which are not really feet, as we saw).

This increasing of the count on our toes is written as:

INC rr
INC IX
INC IY

where "rr" denotes a register pair, such as 'BC', 'DE', or 'HL'.

Note again the simple way we have of denoting which operations are using 8-bit numbers and which are 16-bit numbers:

The 8-bit numbers are denoted by a single letter, while

The 16-bit numbers are denoted by two letters.

But the "counting up" instruction is in fact even more powerful than this might indicate. It is possible to increase the count of any memory location if we are able to specify its address using the

index registers or the 'favoured register pair', HL:

```
INC (IX + d)
INC (IY + d)
INC (HL)
```

(where 'd' is the displacement - not the register D!)

Important note:

Remember carefully our convention of reading brackets:

brackets — mean → 'contents of'

This is very important as there is a lot of similarity between the instructions

```
INC HL
INC (HL)
```

but a world of difference in their execution.

The first would be read as "increase HL" while the second would be read as "increase the contents of the location whose address is HL". (This second reading is often abbreviated to "increase the contents of HL").

As long as you remember the rules of the mnemonic abbreviations you will be saved from this kind of confusion. Let us examine how each operates, and let's assume that HL = 5800H.

INC HL: Look at HL. Increase the count on its fingers
 by one. Result:
 HL = 5801H

INC (HL): Look at HL. Find the memory location referred to by
this number. Increase the count in that location by one. Result:

```
HL = 5800H
(5800H) = (5800H) + 1
```

These are significantly different operations. (You might like to RUN both versions - 5800H is the start of the attribute file). Note also that while 'INC HL' is an instruction acting on a 16-bit number, 'INC (HL)' is an instruction which acts on an 8-bit number only - the number stored in location 5800H!

Decreasing the Count:

The symmetrical nature of the Z80 instruction set would almost certainly ensure that everything you can increase you can also decrease, and this is indeed the case:

```

DEC r
DEC rr
DEC IX
DEC IY
DEC (HL)
DEC (IX + d)
DEC (IY + d)

```

The mnemonic "DEC" is read in english as "decrease", and the same careful attention to the use of brackets must be applied here.

Effect on Flags:

Because the increase or decrease instructions which operate on 8-bit numbers affect every flag except the carry flag, this is a very good place to review the operation of the flags.

IMPORTANT NOTE: the increase and decrease instructions which operate on 16-byte numbers do NOT affect any of the flags. Only increase or decrease operations on 8-bit numbers affect the flags.

Sign: This flag will be set (=1) if bit 7 of the 8-bit
 ----- result is 1.
 This means it will be on if the thumb is up using our previous analogy. Note that this will happen whichever convention you are using for the number.

Zero: This flag will be set (=1) if the 8-bit result is
 ----- zero.

Overflow: This flag will be set (=1) if the contents of
 ----- bit 7 of the 8-bit number is changed by the operation.

Half-Carry: This flag will be set (=1) if there is a carry
 ----- into or a borrow from bit 4 of the 8-bit number.

Negate: This flag is set if the last instruction was a
 ----- subtraction. Thus it is not set (=0) for "INC" and set (=1) for "DEC".

Suggested Exercises:

=====

Use the "LD", "INC" and "DEC" group of instructions to return the numbers you want as a result of the 'USR' operation.

This will give you familiarity with these instructions.

SUMMARY:

We can increase or decrease the contents in any of the 8-bit registers or in any of the 16-bit register pairs or in either of the 16-bit indexing registers.

We can also increase or decrease the contents of memory locations whose address is specified by the HL register pair or by the indexing registers.

Increasing or decreasing 16-bit numbers will not affect any of the flags. Increasing or decreasing 8-bit numbers, either in registers or in memory, affect all the flags except the carry flag.



Instructions for One-Handed Arithmetical Operations

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on Flags					
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H
ADD A, register	1	4	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADD A, number	2	7	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADD A, (HL)	1	7	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADD A, (IX + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADD A, (IY + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADC A, register	1	4	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADC A, number	2	7	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADC A, (HL)	1	7	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADC A, (IX + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	0	#
ADC A, (IY + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	0	#
SUB register	1	4	#	#	#	#	1	#
SUB number	2	7	#	#	#	#	1	#
SUB (HL)	1	7	#	#	#	#	1	#
SUB (IX + D)	3	19	#	#	#	#	1	#
SUB (IY + D)	3	19	#	#	#	#	1	#
SBC A, register	1	4	#	#	#	#	1	#
SBC A, number	2	7	#	#	#	#	1	#
SBC A, (HL)	1	7	#	#	#	#	1	#
SBC A, (IX + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	1	#
SBC A, (IY + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	1	#
CP register	1	4	#	#	#	#	1	#
CP number	2	7	#	#	#	#	1	#
CP (HL)	1	7	#	#	#	#	1	#
CP (IX + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	1	#
CP (IY + d)	3	19	#	#	#	#	1	#

Flags Notation:

- # indicates flag is altered by operation
- 0 indicates flag is set to 0
- 1 indicates flag is set to 1
- indicates flag is unaffected

One Handed Arithmetic

One handed arithmetic is just our reminder that all of these operations in this chapter involve only 8-bits and all of them must be carried out through our dominant hand, register A.

It seems that only our dominant hand knows how to add or subtract!

This fact is so ingrained in the Z80 machine language mnemonics that the abbreviation 'A' is even omitted in some mnemonics. For example to subtract 'B' from 'A', we would normally expect to see

SUB A,B

but in fact the mnemonic is

SUB B.

Despite this limitation on arithmetical instructions (being restricted to the A register), the Z80 language is very versatile in what we can actually add to whatever number we have on our dominant hand:

ADD A, r	Add any single register to A
ADD A, n	Add any 8-bit number to A
ADD A, (HL)	Add the 8-bit number in the box whose address is given by HL
ADD A, (IX + d)	Add the 8-bit number in the box whose address is given by IX + d
ADD A, (IY + d)	Add the 8-bit number in the box whose address is given by IY + d

You can appreciate the extremely versatile range of possible numbers we can add to whatever number is stored in A - any number, any register and virtually any way we care to define a memory location.

The one that is missing is

ADD A, (nn)

where we define the address in the course of the program.

As a result the only way to get such an instruction would be to write:

LD HL,nn
ADD A, (HL)

Note also the favoured role of the HL register again. We cannot specify the memory location using the BC or DE register pairs.

The other limitation implicit in all this is also the inherent limitation of 8-bit numbers which can only hold values up to 255, as we have already seen.

For example, LD A,80H

ADD A, 81H

will give a result of only 1 in 'A' but the carry flag will be set to indicate the result did not fit in.

If the hexadecimal arithmetic confuses you, it's a good exercise to convert the numbers to decimal and check the addition.

Hexadecimal addition and subtraction is the same as ordinary arithmetic:

$$1 + 1 = 2$$

$$1 + 2 = 3$$

etc. but when you get to 1+9 you get

$$1 + 9 = A$$

$$1 + A = B$$

etc. and when you get to 1+F you get

$$1 + F = 10$$

This is because the 'carry' into the next column happens when you get a number bigger than 'F' instead of '9' as in decimal arithmetic.

The results of our machine language program above would therefore be as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r} 80 \\ + 81 \\ \hline 101H \end{array} \quad \text{as } 8 + 8 = 16 \rightarrow 10H$$

What can you do about this carry error?:

The designers of the Z80 have provided us with another instruction similar to ADD, but which takes into account possible overflows into the Carry.

This is a very useful instruction: "ADC", which we read as "ADD WITH CARRY".

This is exactly the same as the "ADD" instruction, with the same range of numbers, registers, etc., which can be added to Register 'A', except that the carry is added on (if it is set).

This makes it possible to add numbers greater than 255 together, by a chaining operation:

eg. to add 1000 (ie. 03E8H) to 2000 (ie. 07D0H) and store the result in BC:

```
LD A,E8H      ;Lower part of 1st no.
ADD A,D0H     ;Lower part of 2nd no.
LD C,A        ;Store result in C
```

```
LD A,03H      ;Higher part of 1st no.
ADC A,07H     ;Higher part of 2nd no.
LD B,A        ;Store result in B
```

After the first addition (E6 + D0) we will have the carry set (because result was greater than FF) and Register A containing B8 (check this for yourselves!)

The second addition (3 + 7) will yield not 0AH (= 10 decimal) as might seem on the surface but 0BH (=11 decimal) because of the carry.

The final result is therefore 0BB8H = 3000! This chaining could go on to take care of any size number, and the result stored in memory rather than in a register pair.

8-BIT SUBTRACTION:

=====

This is exactly the same as 8-bit addition. Two sets of commands exist, one for ordinary subtraction, and one for subtraction with carry:

```
SUB s  - Subtract s
SBC s  - Subtract s with carry
```

The notation 's' is meant to denote the same range of possible operands as for the add instruction.

COMPARING TWO 8-BIT NUMBERS:

Let us step back from machine language for a moment and consider exactly what it is we mean when we compare two numbers:

We know what happens when the two numbers being compared are the same - they are 'equal'. One way to denote this in an arithmetical format would be to say that the difference between the two numbers was zero.

What if the number being compared is greater than the first number (comparison does imply relating two numbers: we compare a number with what we already have on our fingers)? Then the result after subtracting the new number would be negative.

Similarly if the new number is smaller, then the difference would be positive.

We can use these concepts to devise a system of comparisons in machine language. All we need are the flags and the subtract operation. Suppose we wish to compare a range of numbers with 5, say:

LD A,5	;Number we have
SUB N	;Number being compared

Then we will have the following results -

If $N = 5$	Zero flag set, carry flag not set
If $N < 5$	Zero flag not set, carry not set
If $N > 5$	Zero flag not set, carry flag set

It is therefore clear that the test for equality will be the zero flag, and the test for "greater than" will be the carry flag. (The test for "less than" is the absence of both flags).

The only inconvenience of this method is that the contents of 'A' have been altered by the operation.

Fortunately we have the "CP s" operation. This is read in English as "compare". Note that it can only compare what we already have in the 'A' register; the range of possible numbers to be compared are the same as for addition.

"Compare" is exactly the same as "subtract" except that the contents of 'A' are unchanged. The only effect is therefore on the flags.

SUMMARY:

Eight-bit arithmetic on the Z80 is limited to

- addition
- subtraction
- comparison

and can only be performed through the A register.

Given this limitation, however, a wide range of addressing modes exist.

Because of the inherent nature of 8-bit numbers, we must always be careful about overflow. The carry flag (as well as all other flags) is affected by arithmetical operations. We can use this as a warning of overflow.

Additional instructions (add with carry and subtract with carry) allow us to chain arithmetical operations to deal with overflow.

Instructions for Logical Operators

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on Flags					
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H
AND Register	1	4	0	#	#	#	0	1
AND Number	2	7	0	#	#	#	0	1
AND (HL)	1	7	0	#	#	#	0	1
AND (IX + d)	3	19	0	#	#	#	0	1
AND (IY + d)	3	19	0	#	#	#	0	1
OR Register	1	4	0	#	#	#	0	0
OR Number	2	7	0	#	#	#	0	0
OR (HL)	1	7	0	#	#	#	0	0
OR (IX + d)	3	19	0	#	#	#	0	0
OR (IY + d)	3	19	0	#	#	#	0	0
XOR Register	1	4	0	#	#	#	0	0
XOR Number	2	7	0	#	#	#	0	0
XOR (HL)	1	7	0	#	#	#	0	0
XOR (IX + d)	3	19	0	#	#	#	0	0
XOR (IY + d)	3	19	0	#	#	#	0	0

Flags Notation:

- # Indicates flag is altered by operation
- 0 Indicates flag is set to 0
- 1 Indicates flag is set to 1
- Indicates flag is unaffected

Logical Operators

There are three operations which are as valuable in the field of machine (or assembly) language programming as the more commonly used addition, subtraction, multiplication or division are in ordinary arithmetic.

These are generally referred to as Boolean operators after the man who formulated the rules of these operations. These operations are:

AND
OR
XOR

We are already familiar with the concept of operations which apply to an entire 8-bit number, but the reason that these operations are so valuable is they operate on the individual bits of the number (or fingers of the CPU's hand).

Let us look at one of these operations, 'AND':

Bit A	Bit B	Result of Bit A 'AND' Bit B
0	0	0
1	0	0
0	1	0
1	1	1

It is obvious that the result of an 'AND' operation is to give us a '1' only if A and B both contained a '1'.

In machine language, if you AND two numbers, the result is what you would get if you 'AND'ed each of the individual bits of the two numbers.

You may be asking yourself - "What is the point of such an operation?"

The 'AND' operation is extremely useful in that it allows us to mask a byte so that it is altered to contain only certain bits:

If, for example, we wish to limit a particular variable to the range of 0 - 7 only, we quite clearly wish to indicate that we want only the bits 0 - 2 to contain information. (If bit 3 contained information, the number would be at least 8).

eg. 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 =5
 (-----)
 These bits must be '0'.

If we therefore take a number whose value we do not know and apply

the 'AND' operation with '7', the result will be a number which lies in the range 0 - 7.

eg.	0 1 1 0	1 0 0 1	= 105
	0 0 0 0	0 1 1 1	= 7 =>Mask
<hr/>			
result of AND	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 1	= 1 => in range 0 - 7

Note that the Z80 chip only allows for the 'AND' operation to take place with the 'A' register. 'A' can be 'AND'ed with an 8-bit number, any of the other 8-bit registers, with (HL), with (IX+d), or with (IY+d).

eg.	AND 7	Note that as only the 'A' register
	AND E	can be acted on, it need not be
	AND (HL)	mentioned in the instruction.

The same range of possibilities and the restriction to Register A is true for the other Boolean operations, 'OR' and 'XOR'.

The 'OR' operation is very similar in concept to the 'AND' operation:

Bit A	Bit B	Bit A 'OR' Bit B
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

It is obvious that the result of an 'OR' operation is to give us a '1' if either A or B contained a '1'.

Again you may be asking what is the point of such an operation.

The 'OR' operation is also extremely useful in that it allows us to set any bits in a number: if, for example, we wished to ensure that a number was odd, then quite clearly we have to set Bit 0. (The same result could be obtained by using the 'set' instruction).

LD	A,Number	
OR	1	;make number odd

The above two lines would be a typical assembly listing.

The concept of 'XOR' - pronounced 'exclusive or' - is also easy to understand but its actual use in programming is more limited.

The result of 'XOR' is a '1' only if one of A or B contains a '1'.

In other words, the result is the same as for the 'OR' operation in

all cases except when both A and B contain a '1'.
 XOR => OR - AND

Bit A	Bit B	Bit A 'XOR' Bit B
0	0	0
1	0	1
0	1	1
1	1	0

The last thing we must consider is the effect that these operations have on the flags.

Zero Flag	This flag will be on (=1) if the result is zero
Sign Flag	This flag will be on (=1) if bit 7 of result is set
Carry Flag	Flag will be off (=0) after 'AND' 'OR' 'XOR' ie. carry will be reset.
Parity Flag (Note that this flag also doubles as overflow flag)	This flag will be on (=1) if there is even no. of bits in the result: 0 1 1 0 1 1 1 0 => OFF 0 1 1 0 1 0 1 0 => ON.
Half-Carry Flag)	Both flags turn off (=0) after
)	'AND' 'OR' 'XOR'.
Subtract Flag)	These flags are useful if 'BCD'
)	arithmetic is being used.

Use of Boolean Operations on Flags:

There is a special case of the Boolean operators which is very handy - the case of the register A operating on itself.

AND A	A is unchanged, carry flag cleared
OR A	A is unchanged, carry flag cleared
XOR A	A is set to 0, carry flag cleared.

These instructions are often popular because they require only one byte to do what might otherwise require two, such as LD A,0.

The carry flag often needs to be cleared - eg. as a matter of routine before using any of the arithmetic operations such as

ADC	Add with carry
SBC	Subtract with carry.

and this can easily be done by the instruction AND A without affecting the contents of any of the registers.

SUMMARY:

There are three logical operators which are useful in machine language:

AND
OR
XOR

These only operate on 8-bit numbers and one of these numbers must be stored in the A register. The result of the operation is returned in the A register.

Note that the meaning of the AND operation in machine language is different to its meaning as a BASIC instruction.

The logical operators examine the individual bits of the two numbers, and are therefore useful in masking numbers or setting individual bits.

Coping with Two Handed Numbers

So far, we have been dealing only with one-handed (8-bit) numbers, but we have talked about the fact that the CPU can also handle two-handed (16-bit) numbers in some cases.

One case we have already mentioned is the index registers. These "feet" have 16 "toes" (16 bits), and can only handle 16-bit numbers.

As well, we know that using two hands together, we can sometimes hold a 16-bit number. We called these hands that go together "register pairs". They are BC, DE, and HL.

The CPU deals with 16-bit numbers in much the same way that you or I would deal with heavy objects: we need two hands, we are not very adept at manipulating such objects, and the way we handle them is slow and limited.

Let us now examine the various addressing modes (possible contortions?) available for dealing with 16-bit numbers.

Immediate Extended addressing:

```
LD rr, nn
(or other instruction)
```

This is the equivalent of 8-bit immediate addressing. It is merely immediate addressing extended so as to accomodate 16-bit data transfer.

As a general rule instructions that operate on 16-bit numbers are longer and slower than those for 8-bits. For example, while 8-bit immediate addressing instructions are 2 bytes long (one for the instruction and one for the number), the extended version - ie 16-bit - requires three bytes.

The format for Immediate Extended Addressing is as follows:

Byte 1	Instruction	
Byte 2	n1	Low order byte of the number
Byte 3	n2	High order byte of the number.

We use this type of addressing instruction to define the contents of a register pair, for example a pointer to a memory location.

Register addressing:

You may recall that register addressing is the name we give to an instruction if the value we want to manipulate is stored in one of the registers.

The same holds true for 16-bit instructions, except that there are only a few instructions of this type in the CPU's repertoire. These are mainly relating to arithmetical operations, and extremely limited in the register combinations allowed.

e.g. ADD HL, BC

We will mention here again the preference the CPU has for its HL register pair. This is where the muscle goes, and some instructions can only be carried out by this register pair. This is true of the arithmetical instructions, and we deal with this in detail in a later chapter.

Register indirect addressing:

Register indirect addressing is the name we give to instructions where the value we want is in memory, and the address of the memory location is held by a register pair.

In the Z80, this type of addressing is again mainly applied using the register pair HL

e.g. JP (HL)

Extended addressing:

Extended addressing is similar in concept to register indirect extended addressing, except that the value you want is not held in a register pair, but in a pair of memory locations.

e.g. LD HL, (nn)
where nn must be specified at the program stage.

Exercises:

Using the EZ Code Machine Language Editor, enter the following programs:

1. Immediate extended addressing:

```
010F00    LD  BC,15      ;load BC with value 15
C9        RET           ;return
```

When this program is run, you will see that the value of USR on return from the machine language program is 15, just as we defined it.

Note how limited this type of addressing is: you must specify the value of the number in the program.

2. Register addressing:

We will now add a line to the program above:

```
210040    LD  HL, 4000H   ;load HL with 16384
010F00    LD  BC, 15      ;load BC with 15
09        ADD HL, BC      ;add the two numbers
C9        RET           ;return
```

If you run this program, you will still get the same answer as above, namely 15! Why? Didn't we add 16384?

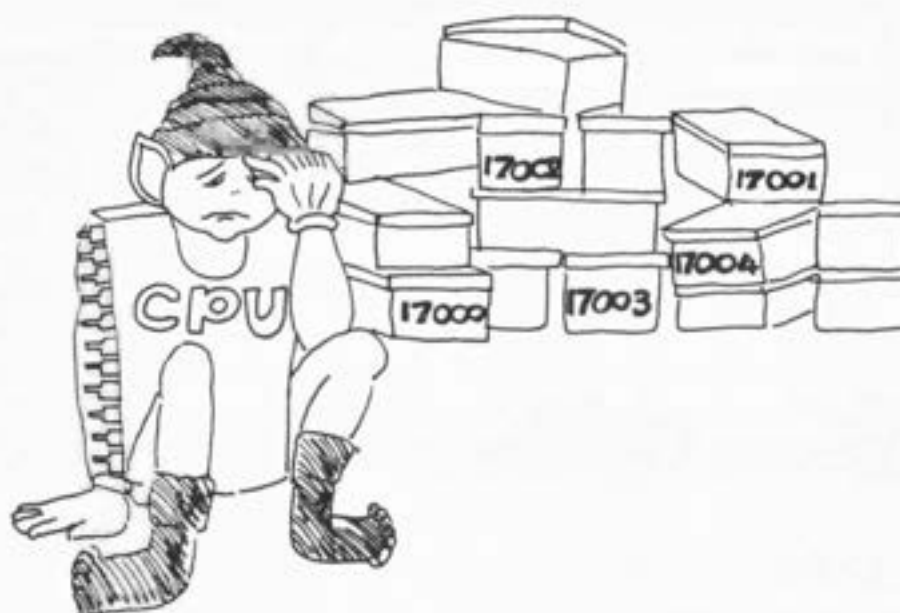
The answer is that we did, but it all happened in the HL register pair, so we didn't see any of it! To see what happened, we have to add a few lines, as follows:

3. Extended addressing:

```
210040    LD  HL, 4000H
010F00    LD  BC,15
09        ADD HL, BC
22647D    LD  (7D64H),HL  ;put HL in 32100 and 32101
ED4B647D  LD  BC,(7D64H)  ;get value of BC from
                                ;32100 and 32101
C9        RET
```

This method of transferring information from HL to BC would not actually be used in programming, as the PUSH and POP instructions are more efficient, but it does illustrate what needs to be done at times to overcome the limited addressing modes of the Z80 CPU.

You can examine memory locations 32100 and 32101 using the "mem" command to check on this program as well.



Manipulating Numbers with Two Hands

In the earlier chapters we have seen just how agile the CPU can be in manipulating numbers on one hand, and we have just discussed the way it can handle two-handed numbers.

The CPU's mathematical ability is such that he can perform very complex calculations involving large numbers with only one hand. Why then bother with two-handed numbers?

There will be times when you will find it is impossible to specify everything you want with just 8-bit numbers. If we were limited to just the range of 0 - 255 of the 8-bit numbers our computer would indeed be a very limited machine.

The most glaring example of needing 16-bit numbers is specifying the address of a memory location. We implied that such a manipulation would be possible when we discussed instructions such as LD A,(HL).

The slow way of doing things would be to load each individual register in the register pair, as we did in previous exercises.

Fortunately for us there are some (but only a few) instructions on the Z80 chip which allow us to manipulate 16-bit numbers. In this chapter we shall be dealing with loading 16-bit numbers, while the next chapter will deal with 16-bit arithmetic.

Specifying Addresses with 16-Bit Numbers:

Please note that all addresses must be specified by a 16-bit number.

You just can't specify an address with only 8-bits, even if it is only addresses from 0 to 255. The way the CPU works, it's not an address unless it is 2 bytes of 8 bits each.

We implied this when we used the short shorthand of

LD A, (nn)

So also remember that 16-bits numbers are stored in register pairs high number first (check again with our chapter on "A Look into the CPU" . . . - "HL" stands for H = "high"; L = "low").

Storing 16-Bit Numbers In Memory

=====

There is one facet of Z80 design which is very difficult to explain or justify:

Instructions For Two-Handed Loading Operations

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on Flags					
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H
LD Reg pair, Number	3/4	10	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD IX, Number	4	14	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD IY, Number	4	14	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD (Address), BC or DE	4	20	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD (Address), HL	3	16	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD (Address), IX	4	20	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD (Address), IY	4	20	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD BC or DE, (Address)	4	20	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD HL, (Address)	3	16	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD IX, (Address)	4	20	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD IY, (Address)	4	20	-	-	-	-	-	-

Flags Notation:

- # Indicates flag is altered by operation
- 0 Indicates flag is set to 0
- 1 Indicates flag is set to 1
- Indicates flag is unaffected

When loading 16-bit numbers into memory, the reverse convention from that of register pairs is used.

The low bit is always stored first in memory!

Let us consider a situation where we place the contents of HL into memory:

Before:		Location	Contents
		32000	00
H	L	32001	00
01	02	32002	00

Let us assume that HL contains the number 258 decimal = 0102H. The memory locations are all empty.

After:		Location	Contents
		32000	02
H	L	32001	01
01	02	32002	00

The convention with 16-bit numbers stored in memory (and in program listings) is that the low bit is always stored first.

There is no justification for that decision except to say that this was what the designers of the Z80 came up with and we now have to live with it.

Please be sure to read this carefully and make sure that you are familiar with this reversal of convention. It is likely to be the single most important source of errors in programs:

In registers: High bit stored first
In memory and programs: Low bit stored first

It is not something that can be glossed over and ignored as every time you deal with a 16-bit instruction in machine code you will need to think carefully about the order of the low and high bits.

Do not however feel put off by this - life on the Z80 would be virtually impossible without 16-bit instructions and it's a price we have to pay.

You can check this for yourselves by "running" this instruction using the "EZ Code Machine Language Editor" and then examining the contents of memory using the "mem" command.

Loading 16-Bit Numbers

The 16-bit load group at its simplest comprises of loading a 16-bit number in the register pair. The general mnemonic abbreviation is

LD rr, nn

Once again we are using the notation of 2 letters to indicate a 16-bit number. "rr" means any register pair, "nn" any 16-bit number.

For those of you without the benefit of an assembler - that is if you have to convert the mnemonics into code by hand using the tables at the back of the book - then the discussion we had on the order of the 16-bit numbers in memory becomes crucial.

Even if you do have an assembler, you should be aware of these reversals of order to enable you to "read" the code when peeking into memory.

Let us look at a specific example:

Load HL with 258

The mnemonic for this is

LD HL,0102H

The instruction for 'LD HL,nn' is, as you will find at the end of the book,

21 XX XX

This means that the number 0102H needs to be inserted in place of the 'XX XX'. But because of the reversal rule, we do not enter this as 1002H.

The proper instruction is therefore:

21 02 01

In our examples we will show you this as

21 02 01 LD HL, 0102H (= 258)

You may not have problems entering our programs, but you must be very familiar with this so that it is not a problem when you write your own programs.

Other 16-Bit Load Instructions

As well as being able to load 16-bit numbers directly into the register pairs we can also load 16-bit numbers directly into the index registers (which are both 16-toe feet, as you will remember).

LD IX, nn

LD IY, nn

We can also manipulate information between a register pair and two successive locations in memory. (This is the 16-bit equivalent of loading the information from a single register into a single memory location).

The general instructions are

```
LD (nn), rr
LD (nn), IX
LD (nn), IY
```

Remember that brackets are the shorthand for "contents of", so that the last instruction would be read as 'load the contents of memory location nn with the value in register IY'.

Because we are dealing with 16-bit numbers, we are actually loading the memory location specified and the following memory location into the register pair. It is not necessary to specify both addresses (because the CPU can figure out the address of the second location) but be careful not to confuse 8-bit operations with 16-bit operations.

The reciprocal nature of many of the instructions is also apparent here, and we can also load a register pair or index register with whatever is in a specific pair of memory locations:

```
LD rr, (nn)
LD IX, (nn)
LD IY, (nn)
```

Exercise:

We know from the Spectrum manual that the start of spare space can be obtained by looking at the contents of memory locations 23653 and 23654.

In BASIC we can determine this by using the line
PRINT PEEK 23653 + 256 * PEEK 23654

We will now perform the same task using machine language:
(23653 = 5C65H)

```
ED 4B 65 5C      LD BC, (23653)
C9              RET
```

NOTE VERY CAREFULLY THAT THE NUMBERS ARE ENTERED LOW BYTE FIRST AND YOU WOULD GET A TOTALLY ERRONEOUS ANSWER IF YOU WERE TO ENTER THEM THE OTHER WAY AROUND.

On the Spectrum, we know that once the program is finalised the position of the spare memory is fixed and we only need to determine

this once in each program.

We use the BC register to get the information because, as you will recall, the value of USR is the contents of the BC register pair when the machine language program has finished.

Note that "LD BC, (NN)" is a four-byte instruction!

You can use similar programs to determine the value of any of the two byte variables listed in the Spectrum manual on pages 173 - 176.



SUMMARY:

We can load 16-bit numbers into any of the register pairs or into the index registers either by specifying the 16-bit number or the memory location where the 16-bit number is to be found.

Similarly we can transfer into memory a 16-bit number from any of the register pairs or from the index registers.

The only point to note very carefully is the peculiar order that 16-bit numbers are stored by the Z80 CPU in memory (and therefore in program instructions involving 16-bit numbers):

The low byte is always stored first !!!

Instructions for Stack Operations

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on flags					
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H
PUSH Reg pair	1	11	-	-	-	-	-	-
PUSH IX or IY	2	15	-	-	-	-	-	-
POP Reg pair	1	10	-	-	-	-	-	-
POP IX or IY	2	14	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD SP, Address	3	10	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD SP, (Address)	3	20	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD SP, HL	1	6	-	-	-	-	-	-
LD SP, IX or IY	2	10	-	-	-	-	-	-

Flags Notation:

- # Indicates flag is altered by operation
- 0 Indicates flag is set to 0
- 1 Indicates flag is set to 1
- Indicates flag is unaffected



Manipulating the Stack

You may recall the image we developed in the beginning of the book of the stack as being where the CPU was able to keep information without having to remember the address of that particular information.

One of the advantages, possibly inadvertent, of the stack operations is that we can only PUSH and POP information in two handed (16-bit) lots. This is because the stack is primarily designed to remember addresses and we need to specify addresses as 16-bit numbers.

The general instructions for pushing information to the stack are

```
PUSH rr
PUSH IX
PUSH IY
```

and the general instruction for popping information back from the stack are

```
POP rr
POP IX
POP IY
```

These are exceptionally simple instructions, and you will note the lack of need to specify an address.

For the ordinary register pairs - ie. not the index registers - these instructions are only a single byte long and therefore very economical in terms of programming space.

PUSH instructions are also not destructive: that is, the 16-bit register still contains the same information after the PUSHes.

Note that because we can PUSH any register pair and POP any register pair, the register you POP needs not be the same as the one you PUSHed!

For example

```
PUSH BC
POP HL
```

The effect of these two instructions is to leave the contents of the BC register unchanged but set the HL register to whatever the contents of the BC register was at the time of the PUSH instruction.

This effectively adds an instruction of the type

```
LD rr, rr'
```

to the 16-bit load group which was conspicuously missing.

As each of PUSH and POP instruction for register pairs is only one byte long, the cost in terms of memory is not expensive.

The other extra benefit is that we are able to PUSH or POP the register pair AF! This is one of the few instructions where AF is treated as a register pair, but it is obviously sensible because there are many times when we would like to preserve the contents of the flags.

What this means is that you can PUSH AF (in effect making a note of what A and F are), perform calculations which may affect the flags as an undesirable side effect, and then POP back AF, leaving the flags unchanged.

Moving the Stack Around:

As you know, the real strength of the PUSH and POP instructions is that we do not have to think about the addresses where the numbers are PUSHed to or POPed from.

You will surely agree that it does not necessarily make sense that the same area of memory should serve as a stack area whether you have 16K of memory or whether you have 48K.

The way the CPU actually keeps track of the address of the stack is by means of a "stack pointer", which can be thought of as a 16-bit register. We mentioned this briefly in our discussion of registers, but not in any of the LOAD, etc. instructions because it is not a register that can be manipulated in the same manner as the other registers.

The main thing one would want to do with the stack pointer is to define its position in memory, and that is exactly the type of instruction that is available:

```
LD SP, nn
LD SP, (nn)
LD SP, IX
LD SP, IY
```

You can examine the stack of the Spectrum by using the "mem" command of the "EZ Code Machine Language Editor" program, and looking in the last 30 - 40 bytes before RAMTOP.

Do not change the contents of the locations in the stack

Almost any change will cause your Spectrum to crash - the screen will go blank and you will have to turn the power on again. This is because the operating system places a lot of information in

requires on the stack and changes will cause it to bomb out.

For the same reason do not try to manipulate the position of the stack pointer unless you are sure of what you are doing.

Note:

In a well organized program the number of POPs and PUSHes should end up the same no matter which path the program follows. Any miscalculation may lead to strange results.

Exercise:

We can use these instructions to examine the address at which the USR subroutine is called from by 'POP'ing the value out of the stack and into the return register BC. The following program shows how:

C1	POP BC	;Get address in BC
C5	PUSH BC	;Put it back on the stack
C9	RET	

Instructions for Two Handed Arithmetic

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on Flags					
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H
ADD HL, Reg pair	1	11	#	-	-	-	0	?
ADD HL, SP	2	11	#	-	-	-	0	?
ADC HL, Reg pair	2	15	#	#	#	#	0	?
ADC IX, SP	2	15	#	#	#	#	0	?
ADD IX, BC or DE	2	15	#	-	-	-	0	?
ADD IX, IX	2	15	#	-	-	-	0	?
ADD IX, SP	2	15	#	-	-	-	0	?
ADD IY, BC or DE	2	15	#	-	-	-	0	?
ADD IY, IY	2	15	#	-	-	-	0	?
ADD IY, SP	2	15	#	-	-	-	0	?
SBC HL, Reg pair	2	15	#	#	#	#	1	?
SBC HL, SP	2	15	#	#	#	#	1	?

Flags Notation:

- # Indicates flag is altered by operation
- 0 Indicates flag is set to 0
- 1 Indicates flag is set to 1
- Indicates flag is unaffected
- ? Indicates effect is not known

Two Fisted Arithmetic

One of the benefits of being able to have 16-bit capabilities on what is effectively an 8-bit processor is that we can use the 16-bits to specify addresses, or to perform calculations involving integer numbers up to 65,355 (or in the range -32,768 to +32,767 if negative numbers are to be permitted).

In this light it is easy to see why in some early microcomputers, like the original Sinclair ZX80, all arithmetic in BASIC was limited to integer numbers in the range -32,000 to +32,000.

But even though we can perform some arithmetic with two hands, our title for this chapter gives a hint of what is to come - two handed arithmetic is a little clumsy compared to one-handed arithmetic. The range of options is just not there!

Favoured Register Pair:

In the same way that the 'A' register is the favoured register in 8-bit arithmetic, so there is a favoured register pair in 16-bit arithmetic, and it is the HL register pair.

This favoritism is not quite so pronounced as in the 8-bit case, so we do not omit the name of the register pair.

Addition:

The additions are quite straightforward:

```
ADD HL,BC
ADD HL,DE
ADD HL,HL
ADD HL,SP
```

But that is it!

Note that it is not possible to add an absolute number to HL - eg. 'Add HL,nn' is not permitted. To perform that kind of calculation we need to:

```
LD DE,nn
ADD HL,DE
```

When you consider that this now ties up four of the 8-bit registers out of a total of 7, you realise it's not something you want to do too often.

Note also that there is no addition between HL and the index registers. You will also remember that there is no LOAD instruction which permits you to transfer the contents of IX or IY

to BC or DE, so the only way to do such an addition would be like:

```
PUSH IX
POP  DE
ADD HL,DE
```

The one point of note is the 'SP' register - the stack pointer. This is one of the very few operations where 'SP' is treated like a proper register, but obviously you can't use it as a variable! Think of what would happen to all the POPs and PUSHes if you varied the contents of 'SP' at will!

Effect on Flags

16-bit arithmetic is where the carry flag really comes into a field of its own, because as you can see from the table at the beginning of this chapter, the only other flag that is affected by the 'add' instruction is the 'subtraction' flag (and all we are saying is that the 'add' instruction is not a subtraction!)

The carry flag will be set if there is an overflow from the high bit of 'H' - any overflow from 'L' is automatically placed into 'H' by the calculation.

Add With Carry:

Because of the limited nature of 16-bits, we are able to chain additions just as in the 8-bit case. The instruction "add with carry" - mnemonic 'ADC' - operates in a similar manner to 'add' and with the same range of register pairs:

```
ADC  HL,BC
ADC  HL,DE
ADC  HL,HL
ADC  HL,SP
```

16-Bit Subtraction

16-bit subtraction is also a very straightforward operation, but there is no subtraction without carry: if you are not sure of the status of the carry flag, be sure that your program includes a line to clear the carry flag before any subtraction operation.

```
SBC  HL,BC
SBC  HL,DE
SBC  HL,HL
SBC  HL,SP
```

(That last instruction has obvious application: set HL to the end of the memory used by your program, screen display and variables,

subtract SP, and the result (negative) will be the amount of free space. Can you write a simple program to do that? See the end of the chapter to confirm your solution).

Effect Of Carry Arithmetic On Flags:

You may have noticed that three other flags are affected by the 'add with carry' and 'subtract with carry' that were not affected by the simple 16-bit addition instructions.

These are the zero flag, the sign flag and overflow flag. Each of these is set according to the result of the operation.

Index Register Arithmetic:

Index registers are totally limited to addition without carry!

Furthermore the range of registers that can be added to the index registers is extremely limited:

- Adding the 'BC' or 'DE' register pair
- Adding the index register to itself
- Adding the stack pointer.

Solution to Memory Left Exercise:

The end of the memory space the program uses is defined by the contents of the STKEND memory location. This is defined as 23653 and 23654 in the Spectrum manual.

Obviously if we load HL with the contents of that location we are halfway there:

```
LD HL,(STKEND)
then subtract the 'stack pointer' (SBC HL,SP ?)
```

Because of the 'carry' we need to clear the carry flag. This is most easily achieved by the 'AND A' instruction, which is covered earlier in the book (p77).

```
AND    A
SBC    HL,SP
```

Three-quarter marks if you knew you had to allow for the carry but didn't know how to do it. One-quarter marks if you forgot all about the carry.

Because the stack pointer is in higher memory than the top of your program (or else you are in diabolical trouble) the result will be negative.

Let us now proceed to get the number of bytes left as a positive number, using the 'BC' register ('DE' would be just as good for this). We first want to shift HL to BC, but there is no 'load' instruction to do this and we will need to use a push followed by a pop:

```
PUSH HL
POP BC
```

HL still has the same information as before, so $HL = BC$.

To get $HL = -BC$, subtract BC from HL twice (but don't forget that the carry has just been set by the subtraction so must be cleared again):

```
AND A
SBC HL,BC
SBC HL,BC
```

HL now contains the negative value of what it contained before - ie. the positive number of bytes left.

We now need to get the number back into the BC register pair again to get a result from the 'USR' function. To get HL back into BC:

```
PUSH HL
POP BC.
```

and finally a return from the USR function:

```
RET
```

Did you get this right?
Notice how handy the stack is!



Loops and Jumps

Loops and jumps are what gives a computer program real power. Once you have the ability to make decisions and to execute different bits of programs as a result of previous calculations you are really getting places.

This freedom can also cause problems, create programs which are difficult to follow, and almost impossible to debug.

I would strongly suggest that you design your computer programs carefully before writing any machine code, and that is why we have included the chapter "Planning Your Machine Language Program". I emphasise this now because loops and jumps are what will entice you away from good program design.

Machine Language Equivalent of 'GOTO':

In BASIC, you are familiar with the instruction 'GOTO', which transfers control of your program to the instructions in the line you 'GOTO'.

Nothing could be simpler to implement in machine language: just specify the memory location where you would like the CPU to find the next instruction and you are half-way there.

The most simple instruction is "Jump To":

```
JP  XX XX
JP  (HL)
JP  (IX)
JP  (IY)
```

One of these instructions can also be made to be dependent on the status of one of the flags, such as the carry flag. This conditional jump instruction is:

```
JP  cc, nn
```

where cc is the condition to be met. If we had

```
JP  Z,0000
```

for example, this would be read "jump if zero flag is set to address '0000'. (This is the address the Spectrum jumps to when you turn the power on, and as such a 'JP' to zero might be used in a machine language program if you wanted to clear all the memory and start again with 'K').

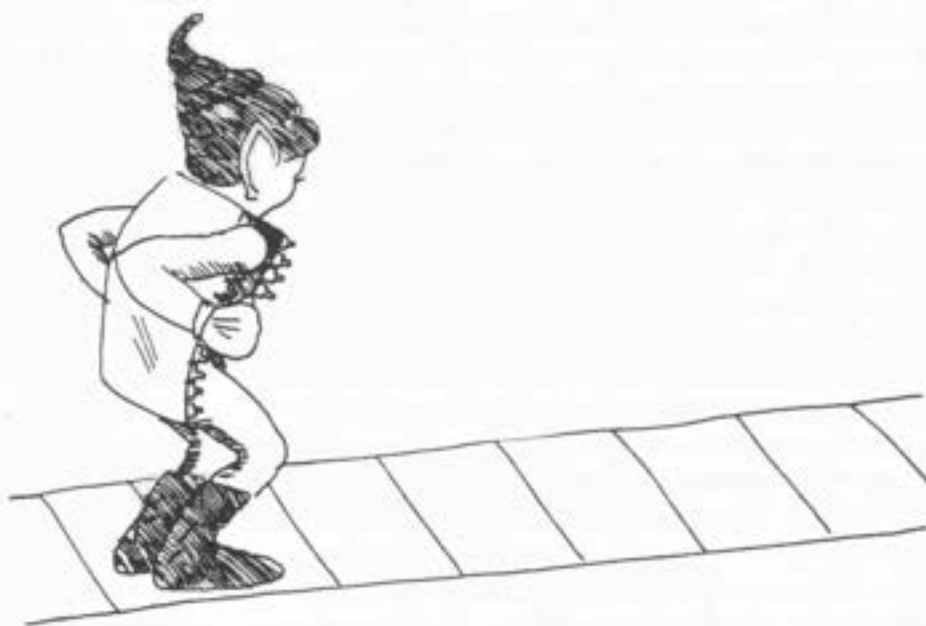
Now note that the CPU does not allow for any mistakes. If you say 'JUMP', it will jump. Because almost any code can be construed as an instruction, the CPU does not care if you land it in the middle of data, or in the second byte of a two-byte instruction: it will read the byte at the address it finds and presumes that is the

start of the next instruction.

The way the CPU works out the jump instructions is really quite simple: it has a little counter called the "program counter" which tells it where to find the next instruction to be executed. In the normal course of programming (that is, without jumps) the CPU looks at the instruction to be executed and adds however many bytes there are to the instruction to the program counter.

Thus if it meets a 2-byte instruction, it adds 2, while a 4-byte instruction will make it add 4 to the program counter.

When it comes across a "jump" instruction, it merely replaces the contents of the program counter with whatever value you have specified. That is why you cannot allow any errors to creep in.



Long Jumps and Short Jumps

We can describe the above instructions to be the machine language equivalent of a 'long jump' because the 16-bit address allows us to jump to anywhere the Z80 chip can possibly go.

The disadvantage of the long jump is that:

- A. Often we don't want to jump that far but still have to use a 3-byte instruction.
- B. We cannot easily relocate the program to another part of memory because we are specifying the absolute address.

It was mainly to overcome these two disadvantages that the 'short jump' was introduced. This is referred to as a "relative jump" and allows us to jump up to +127 bytes from our present position or up to -128 bytes from the present position. ie. the distance jumped can be specified in one byte!

Relative Jump Instruction:

JR d

where d is the relative displacement.

We can also make the relative jump dependent on some condition, such as whether the carry is set, or the zero flag is set, for example. These conditional jumps are written as

JR cc, d

where cc is the condition to be met.

The value of the displacement 'd' is added to the "program counter".

This means it takes the present value of the program counter and adds the relative value you have specified. The value you specify can be either positive - jumping forward - or negative - jumping backwards. If you check back to our chapter on negative numbers you will realise this means that relative jumps are limited to the range -128 to +127.

Note that, when the CPU is executing a relative jump instruction, the program counter is already pointing to the next instruction which would be executed if the condition was not met.

This is because when the CPU comes across "JR" it knows that it has a 2-byte instruction to deal with and adds 2 to the program counter - the program counter is therefore pointing to the instruction after the relative jump!

Eg. In a program such as

Location		Code
32000		ADD A,B
32001		JR Z,02H
32003		LD B,0
32005	Next	LD HL,4000H

The following is the way the CPU deals with the program if it ignores the jump instruction at 32001 (ie. zero flag not set):

Load byte at 32000

Because the byte is only a 1-byte instruction so set program counter to 32001.

Execute instruction.

Load byte specified by Program Counter (32001)

Byte is part of 2-byte instruction so add 2 to Program Counter to make it 32003

Get next byte to complete instruction

Execute instruction

Load byte specified by Program Counter (32003)

Byte is part of 2-byte instruction so add 2 to Program Counter (now equal to 32005)

Get next byte to complete instruction

Execute Instruction

At location 32001 the program encounters the Relative Jump instruction. If the zero flag is not set, as in our example above, the CPU does nothing.

In general, the CPU executes jump instructions as follows:

If the zero flag is set, add 2 more to the Program Counter (this would make it = 32005)

If the zero flag is not set, do nothing
(Program Counter remains = 32003)

In other words, the relative jump allows us to jump over the instruction "LD B,0" in certain cases.

This also explains why there are two times shown for the time taken for this instruction. It takes less time to do nothing than to calculate the new program counter.

The CPU will therefore execute either the instruction at 32003 or the instruction at 32005 depending on the zero flag.

It is also possible to make the relative jump negative as we have already mentioned.

Exercise:

Because the relative jump is a 2-byte instruction, and the program counter is pointing to the next instruction after the relative jump, what would be the effect of an instruction which read:

```
JR -2
```

Machine Language "For Next" Loops:

You are, I am sure, familiar with the BASIC form of the "For . . . Next" loops:

```
FOR I = 1 to 6
LET C = C+1
NEXT I
```

The machine language equivalent is similar but takes a different form. Let us consider how we could implement the machine language loop using the arithmetic functions and the relative jump:

```
LD B,1      ;Set counter to 1
LD A,7      ;Max. of counter + 1
LOOP INC C   ;C = C + 1
INC B       ;Increment counter
CP B        ; Is B = A?
JR NZ,LOOP  ; If not loop again
```

This will work, but note the following:

We are tying up 2 register pairs, one to increase, and one to hold the maximum; and the instruction which increments the counter does not set any flags on completion.

A much better way would be if we counted down!

We know that we have to do the loop 6 times, so why not set 'B' to 6 and count down?

This will give us:

```
LD B,6      ;set counter
LOOP INC C   ; C = C + 1
DEC B       ;Decrease counter
JR NZ,LOOP  ;Loop is not finished
```

You can see that this is a much more efficient way of doing things.

The 280 chip has a special instruction which combines the last two lines above.

This instruction is written as:

and is read as "decrease (B) and jump if not zero". (The d is the relative displacement). This instruction is a 2-byte instruction and therefore saves one byte on the above coding.

The limitation of the 'DJNZ' instruction is that one can only count up to 256. DJNZ instructions can however be nested, if required:

00000000000000000000000000000000

1990 1991 1992 1993 1994 1995 1996 1997 1998 1999 2000 2001 2002 2003 2004 2005 2006 2007 2008 2009 2010 2011 2012 2013 2014 2015 2016 2017 2018 2019 2020 2021 2022 2023 2024 2025 2026 2027 2028 2029 2030 2031 2032 2033 2034 2035 2036 2037 2038 2039 2040 2041 2042 2043 2044 2045 2046 2047 2048 2049 2050 2051 2052 2053 2054 2055 2056 2057 2058 2059 2060 2061 2062 2063 2064 2065 2066 2067 2068 2069 2070 2071 2072 2073 2074 2075 2076 2077 2078 2079 2080 2081 2082 2083 2084 2085 2086 2087 2088 2089 2090 2091 2092 2093 2094 2095 2096 2097 2098 2099 2100 2101 2102 2103 2104 2105 2106 2107 2108 2109 2110 2111 2112 2113 2114 2115 2116 2117 2118 2119 2120 2121 2122 2123 2124 2125 2126 2127 2128 2129 2130 2131 2132 2133 2134 2135 2136 2137 2138 2139 2140 2141 2142 2143 2144 2145 2146 2147 2148 2149 2150 2151 2152 2153 2154 2155 2156 2157 2158 2159 2160 2161 2162 2163 2164 2165 2166 2167 2168 2169 2170 2171 2172 2173 2174 2175 2176 2177 2178 2179 2180 2181 2182 2183 2184 2185 2186 2187 2188 2189 2190 2191 2192 2193 2194 2195 2196 2197 2198 2199 2200 2201 2202 2203 2204 2205 2206 2207 2208 2209 2210 2211 2212 2213 2214 2215 2216 2217 2218 2219 2220 2221 2222 2223 2224 2225 2226 2227 2228 2229 2230 2231 2232 2233 2234 2235 2236 2237 2238 2239 2240 2241 2242 2243 2244 2245 2246 2247 2248 2249 2250 2251 2252 2253 2254 2255 2256 2257 2258 2259 2260 2261 2262 2263 2264 2265 2266 2267 2268 2269 2270 2271 2272 2273 2274 2275 2276 2277 2278 2279 2280 2281 2282 2283 2284 2285 2286 2287 2288 2289 2290 2291 2292 2293 2294 2295 2296 2297 2298 2299 2300 2301 2302 2303 2304 2305 2306 2307 2308 2309 2310 2311 2312 2313 2314 2315 2316 2317 2318 2319 2320 2321 2322 2323 2324 2325 2326 2327 2328 2329 2330 2331 2332 2333 2334 2335 2336 2337 2338 2339 2340 2341 2342 2343 2344 2345 2346 2347 2348 2349 2350 2351 2352 2353 2354 2355 2356 2357 2358 2359 2360 2361 2362 2363 2364 2365 2366 2367 2368 2369 2370 2371 2372 2373 2374 2375 2376 2377 2378 2379 2380 2381 2382 2383 2384 2385 2386 2387 2388 2389 2390 2391 2392 2393 2394 2395 2396 2397 2398 2399 2400 2401 2402 2403 2404 2405 2406 2407 2408 2409 2410 2411 2412 2413 2414 2415 2416 2417 2418 2419 2420 2421 2422 2423 2424 2425 2426 2427 2428 2429 2430 2431 2432 2433 2434 2435 2436 2437 2438 2439 2440 2441 2442 2443 2444 2445 2446 2447 2448 2449 2450 2451 2452 2453 2454 2455 2456 2457 2458 2459 2460 2461 2462 2463 2464 2465 2466 2467 2468 2469 2470 2471 2472 2473 2474 2475 2476 2477 2478 2479 2480 2481 2482 2483 2484 2485 2486 2487 2488 2489 2490 2491 2492 2493 2494 2495 2496 2497 2498 2499 2500 2501 2502 2503 2504 2505 2506 2507 2508 2509 2510 2511 2512 2513 2514 2515 2516 2517 2518 2519 2520 2521 2522 2523 2524 2525 2526 2527 2528 2529 2530 2531 2532 2533 2534 2535 2536 2537 2538 2539 2540 2541 2542 2543 2544 2545 2546 2547 2548 2549 2550 2551 2552 2553 2554 2555 2556 2557 2558 2559 2560 2561 2562 2563 2564 2565 2566 2567 2568 2569 2570 2571 2572 2573 2574 2575 2576 2577 2578 2579 2580 2581 2582 2583 2584 2585 2586 2587 2588 2589 2590 2591 2592 2593 2594 2595 2596 2597 2598 2599 2600 2601 2602 2603 2604 2605 2606 2607 2608 2609 2610 2611 2612 2613 2614 2615 2616 2617 2618 2619 2620 2621 2622 2623 2624 2625 2626 2627 2628 2629 2630 2631 2632 2633 2634 2635 2636 2637 2638 2639 2640 2641 2642 2643 2644 2645 2646 2647 2648 2649 2650 2651 2652 2653 2654 2655 2656 2657 2658 2659 2660 2661 2662 2663 2664 2665 2666 2667 2668 2669 2670 2671 2672 2673 2674 2675 2676 2677 2678 2679 2680 2681 2682 2683 2684 2685 2686 2687 2688 2689 2690 2691 2692 2693 2694 2695 2696 2697 2698 2699 2700 2701 2702 2703 2704 2705 2706 2707 2708 2709 2710 2711 2712 2713 2714 2715 2716 2717 2718 2719 2720 2721 2722 2723 2724 2725 2726 2727 2728 2729 2730 2731 2732 2733 2734 2735 2736 2737 2738 2739 2740 2741 2742 2743 2744 2745 2746 2747 2748 2749 2750 2751 2752 2753 2754 2755 2756 2757 2758 2759 2760 2761 2762 2763 2764 2765 2766 2767 2768 2769 2770 2771 2772 2773 2774 2775 2776 2777 2778 2779 2780 2781 2782 2783 2784 2785 2786 2787 2788 2789 2790 2791 2792 2793 2794 2795 2796 2797 2798 2799 2800 2801 2802 2803 2804 2805 2806 2807 2808

It is therefore useful to set up waiting loops using the DJNZ instruction:

You might be waiting quite awhile for the CPU to exit this loop!

Instructions for Call and Return Group

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on Flags					
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H
Call address	3	17	-	-	-	-	-	-
Call cc,address	3	10/17	-	-	-	-	-	-
RET	1	10	-	-	-	-	-	-
RET cc	1	5/11	-	-	-	-	-	-

Note: cc is condition to be met for instruction to be executed.
The following are the conditions which can be used:

Flag	Abbreviation	Meaning
Carry	C	Carry Set (=1)
	NC	Carry Clear (=0)
Zero	Z	Zero Set (=1)
	NZ	Zero Clear (=0)
Parity	PE	Parity Even (=1)
	PO	Parity Odd (=0)
Sign	M	Sign Minus (=1)
	P	Sign Pos. (=0)

Flags Effected:

Note that none of the flags are effected by the call or return instructions.

Timing:

Where two times are shown, the shorter time indicated is for the case of the condition not being met.

Use of Subroutines

The use of subroutines is as easy in machine language programming as it is in ordinary BASIC programs, if not easier.

In fact, remember that using the 'USR' function in your BASIC program is really calling a subroutine: you will recall we need to have a 'RETurn' instruction to finish!

Therefore it is very easy for you to test certain subroutines independently of your main machine language program.

The major difference that you will face in implementing subroutines in your machine language program is that it is necessary for you to know the address where the subroutine starts.

This can cause a problem if you store the machine language routines in a variable array, because the address of this variable is not necessarily fixed. It also means that machine language programs that use subroutines cannot easily be relocated to new positions in memory.

Subroutines can also be called conditionally. This is the machine language equivalent of the basic statement:

IF (condition) then GOSUB (line)

Care should be taken when in a subroutine so as to not affect any flags or registers which are needed for the next comparisons. This is so you don't branch off again on a following CALL statement, "after returning to where you left off."

The difference is that the only conditions allowed are the status of four of the flags:

Carry flag
Zero flag
Parity flag (also overflow flag)
Sign flag

Remember that all these flags are set according to the last instruction which affected that particular flag.

It is therefore good practice to have 'CALL' or 'RETURN' instruction immediately after the instruction which sets the flag.

eg.

LD	A, (Number)
CP	1
CALL	Z,One
CP	2
CALL	Z,Two


```

CP      3
CALL    Z,Three

```

The above routine allows you jump to various routines depending on the value stored in the location 'number', but note that it assumes that the subroutines do not change the value in Register A !!! (Why?).

A shorter routine is possible if you know that there are only the above three possibilities for the value stored in 'number':

```

LD      A,(Number)
CP      2
CALL    Z,Two      ; A = 2
CALL    C,One      ; A ( 2 = ) A = 1
CALL    Three      ; A ) 2 = ) A = 3

```

This is because the instruction 'CP 2' sets both the zero and carry flags and the call instructions do not affect any flags.

Similarly the use of the conditional return from a subroutine is very useful. (But not considered to be good programming practice).

Instructions for Block Compare and Move Group

Mnemonic	Bytes	Time Taken	Effect on Flags					
			C	Z	PV	S	N	H
LDI	2	16	-	-	#	-	0	0
LDD	2	16	-	-	#	-	0	0
LDIR	2	21/16	-	-	0	-	0	0
LDDR	2	21/16	-	-	0	-	0	0
CPI	2	16	-	#	#	#	1	#
CPD	2	16	-	#	#	#	1	#
CPIR	2	21/16	-	#	#	#	1	#
CPDR	2	21/16	-	#	#	#	1	#

Flags Notation:

Indicates flag is altered by operation
 0 Indicates flag is set to 0
 1 Indicates flag is set to 1
 - Indicates flag is unaffected

Timing:

For repeat instructions, the times shown are for each cycle. The shorter time indicated is for the case of the instruction terminating - eg. for CPIR, either BC = 0 or A = (HL).

Block Operations

You should by now be very familiar with the language your computer understands - it's very much like learning a foreign language: when you can think in that language you know you have mastered it.

This chapter covers the last set of very useful instructions - the next few chapters deal with instructions that are nice to have around and in some circumstances come into their own, but in general terms you should be able to write machine language programs with what you already know.

Be sure however to read the chapter on planning your machine language program!

The instructions covered in this chapter are by their very nature able to leap tall buildings in a single bound, faster than a speeding bullet - in other words, instructions which can operate on a block of memory rather than just single 8-bit bytes.

Let's start with the simplest of these:
CPI

With your knowledge of the Z80 language, you should be able to immediately recognise this as a member of the "compare" family, and it is in fact an extended compare.

It is read in English as "compare and increase". (You will remember that one can only compare anything with the contents of Register 'A', and this does not need to be mentioned in the instruction.)

"CPI" compares 'A' with (HL) and increases HL automatically. This means that after the CPI operation, HL is already pointing to the next location ready for a repeat.

With such an instruction we might be able to write a routine to search all of memory for a particular match, as follows:

```
Search      CPI
            JR      NZ, Search
```

In this way, unless a match is found (zero flag will be set as in all compare instructions) the program will keep on looking.

Unfortunately this is not such a good idea because unless a match is found the program will never end! Fortunately the designers of the Z80 language thought of this and the CPI instruction also automatically decreases BC!

We can therefore select at will the length of the block we wish to

search through and thus specify an end to the search.

Let's assume that the length of the block we are searching through is less than 255 bytes long, so that the BC count would only be stored in the C register, we could write:

Search	CPI
	JR Z, Found
	INC C
	DEC C
	JR NZ, Search
Notfound	.....
	...
Found	.....

Obviously a different routine would be implemented if the length of the block was more than 255 bytes. Note the use of the INC and DEC instructions to test whether $C = 0$. These two instructions only require one byte each, and as they both affect the zero flag the net effect is to set the flag only if C was originally zero. The other benefit is that this coding does not alter any of the other registers.

Now we could also wish to search a block of memory starting from the top rather than from the bottom, and we therefore have the instruction:

CPD

which is read in English as "compare and decrease". The decrease refers to HL of course, and the effect on BC is still the same!

Even more powerful than these two instructions are the real supermen:

CPIR
CPDR

These are read as "compare, increase and repeat".
and "compare, decrease and repeat".

These 2-byte instructions are unbelievably powerful: they allow the CPU to automatically continue searching through the block of memory until either a match is found or the end of block is reached. (Naturally we have to specify A, HL and BC before starting, but even so this is unbelievably economical coding).

Because the instruction will stop for one of two possibilities (ie. match found in middle of block or no match at all) we have to ensure we use some code at the end to differentiate between the two possibilities.

You should be aware however that no matter the speed of machine language, CPIR and other similar instructions can be very time consuming instructions.

CPIR, for example, requires 21 cycles for each byte to be searched. Admittedly there are 3,500,000 cycles in each second, but even so this means that searching through 3,500 bytes requires 1/50th of a second.

This may not seem like a very long time to you but when you realise that the screen is displayed every 1/50th of a second or so you realise that it can be significant.

The remaining block operations are along the lines of
"Move it, Mate":

These are:

LDI	LDIR
LDD	LDDR

Obviously part of the "load" family these are read as:

- Load and increase
- Load, increase and repeat
- Load and decrease
- Load, decrease, and repeat

Taking the simplest one first, 'LDI' is really a combination of the following set of actions:

- Load (DE) with (HL)
- Increment DE, HL
- Decrement BC

Note that this is the only instruction that will load from one memory location to another without having to be loaded into a register first.

The use of the 'DE' register as the destination address is very clever - this way you never forget which register holds the de-destination address!

The symmetrical instruction 'LDD' is exactly the same except that HL and DE are decreased as loading proceeds. The difference between 'LDI' and 'LDD' is more important when the two blocks (the one where the information is and the one where the information is going) overlap.

Suppose we are using this instruction in a word processing application, and we want to delete a word from a sentence:

The big brown dog jumped over the fox.
1 3 5 7 9 1 3 5 7 9 1 3 5 7 9 1 3 5 7 9

If we want to delete the word 'brown' all we need to do is to move

the rest of the sentence to the left by 6 characters.

DE = destination	= character 9
HL = source	= character 15
BC = count	= 24 characters.

Let us start with LDI: after one instruction we have

original = The big brown dog jumped over the fox.

move one char: d (---d

new = The big drown dog jumped over the fox.

and HL = 10, DE = 16, BC = 23.

After 2 more instructions:

The big dogwn dog jumped over the fox.

And after all the instructions have been completed:

The big dog jumped over the fox.e fox.

(If we had wanted the portion after the full stop to be blanked out this could have been achieved by adding blanks at the end of the original sentence and increasing BC to say 30.)

If we now want to reverse the process and return the word 'brown' to the sentence, we can't simply use 'LDI' again because we will overwrite the information we want to shift:

eg.	HL = Source	= Character 9
	DE = Destination	= Character 15
	BC = Count	= 24 Characters

After one instruction we would have:

original = The big dog jumped over the fox.e fox.

move char d---) d

new = The big dog judped over the fox.e fox.

After 6 instructions we would have:

The big dog judog juver the fox.e fox.

So far so good. But another three gives:

The big dog judog jud og the fox.e fox.

The problem is that we have overwritten the information we want to transfer. You can verify this by trying to move one character at a time yourslef by hand.

It is therefore better to use the 'LDI' instruction, with the DE register pointing to the end of the sentence.x This will ensure the information woll not be overwritten in the move.

The instructions 'LDIR' and 'LDDR' are even more powerful, able to shift thousands of bytes around very quickly.

Exercise:

Write a short routine to transfer 32 bytes from the ROM part of memory to the screen.

Note how the 32 first bytes in the screen are arranged.

Now try 256 bytes, then 2048 bytes.

Instructions that are less frequently used

Register Exchanges

We briefly discussed in the first few chapters the idea of the CPU having gloves it could put on or take off, and thus store some information in a place that is more accessible than memory locations.

You must remember that you cannot manipulate these alternate registers and the analogy with gloves is a very valuable one. While they will retain their shape, there is no way they can do any arithmetic or counting by themselves.

The first instruction is:

```
EX    AF,AF'
```

This does exactly what its name suggests: "Exchange the register pairs AF and AF'". In the gloves analogy we would say "Swap gloves on the pair of hands AF". In other words, put on the spare set of AF gloves - you will remember the spare set is always denoted as AF'.

The next general swap gloves instruction is:

```
EXX
```

This instruction swaps the gloves on all other 8-bit registers as follows:

B	C		B'	C'
D	E	(=)	D'	E'
H	L		H'	L'

This is therefore a very powerful instruction but its very power makes it limited in use. This is because it acts on all the registers at once and it is not possible to hold any value back.

(Except in register 'A' which is not affected by "EXX").

The only way around this problem is to write a short routine along the lines of:

```
PUSH    HL
EXX
POP     HL
```

This means that you have saved the values of BC, DE and HL in the alternate set of registers but still have HL's value to work with.

The last instruction in this group does not really fall within the swap gloves type:

```
EX     DE,HL
```

In this instruction DE gets the contents of HL and HL the contents of DE.

This instruction is indeed very useful, because as we saw HL is a favoured register pair in many applications and there are times when the value we want to manipulate is in DE.



Bit, Set and Reset

So far all the instructions we have been dealing with have involved the manipulation of 8-bit or 16-bit numbers.

The "Bit, Set and Reset" group allows us to manipulate the single fingers on the CPU's hand (single bits of the registers) and/or contents of memory locations. Because of the very tedious nature of fiddling with single bits this is not a very commonly used group of instructions.

Furthermore, it tends to take even longer to set a single bit in a register or memory location than it does to change or examine the entire 8 bits of that memory location or register.

Nonetheless there are times when you need to know whether a bit in the middle is set or not, or even to set a bit. Note however that many of the bit setting or resetting can be carried out using the logical operators.

The "Bit, Set and Reset" group of instructions allows us to turn any bit "on" or "off" at will, or even just look at a specified bit to see what its status is.

Let us look at the first set of instructions:

```
SET n, r
SET n, (HL)
SET n, (IX + d)
SET n, (IY + d)
```

The "SET" instruction turns "on" (ie. = 1) the bit numbered 'n' (using the notation 0 - 7) in register 'r' or in the specified memory location.

No changes are made to any of the flags.

The "RESET" group of instructions operate on exactly the same range of registers or memory locations, but instead of turning the bits "on", it turns the bits "off" (ie. = 0).

The "BIT" instructions should really be read as "BIT?" in English as the function of this instruction is to test the contents of the indicated bit.

No changes are made to the registers or memory locations but the zero flag is altered according to the status of the bit tested.

```
If Bit = 0    then    zero flag is set on ( = 1)
If Bit = 1    then    zero flag is set off ( = 0)
```

This may seem confusing at first glance but think of it this way:
if the bit is zero, then the zero flag is raised; if the bit is on,
then naturally the zero flag would not be raised.



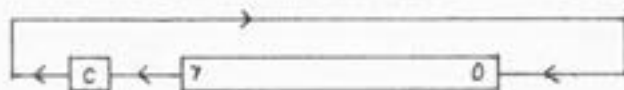
Rotates and Shifts

You can move them to the left, you can move them to the right, you can shift those registers any way you like.

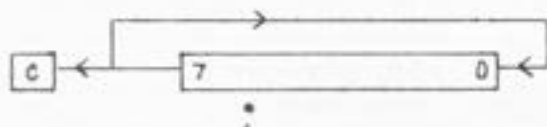
The trick is to differentiate between the various shifts and rotations in order to know which one to use when, and to remember that the 'carry' bit can often be considered to be a 9th bit of the registers. (ie. the carry is bit number 8 if the bits are numbered 0 - 7).

Some rotate instructions go right through the carry (as the 9th bit) so that the entire rotation goes through a cycle of 9 bits.

For example, let us look at 'RLA' (the meaning of each instruction will be made clear later in this chapter):



Other rotations involve only an 8-bit cycle, although the carry flag is changed according to the bit which has to go the 'long way round'. An example of this is the 'RLCA' instruction:



This means that in a left rotation as above the contents of bit 0 are transferred to bit 1, bit 1 to 2, etc., but the contents of bit 7 are transferred to both the carry bit and to bit 0. Compare this with the 'RLA' instruction above where bit 7 gets transferred to the carry bit and the carry bit gets transferred to bit 0.

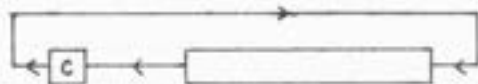
Left Rotations:

There are basically two types of left rotations:

* ROTATE LEFT REGISTERS - this is a 9-bit cycle rotation as illustrated above for 'RLA'

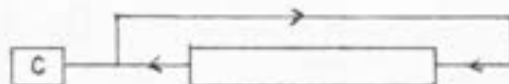
RLA - "Rotate Left Accumulator"

RL r - "Rotate Left Register r"



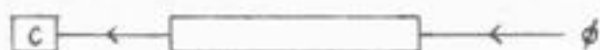
* ROTATE LEFT CIRCULAR - the 'circular' means that the cycle is only 8-bits as with the RLCA instruction illustrated above.

RLCA	- Rotate left circular 'A'
RLC r	- Rotate left circular 'r'
RLC (HL)	- Rotate left circular (HL)
RLC (IX + d)	- Rotate left circular (IX + d)
RLC (IY + d)	- Rotate left circular (IY + d)



As well as these two left rotate instructions there is a shift left instruction available, but this can only operate on register 'A':

SLA - Shift Left Accumulator

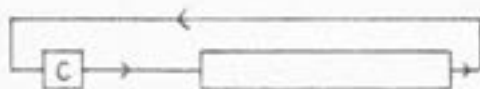


This is different in that the contents of the carry bit are lost and bit zero is filled with 0. This is effectively multiplying 'A' by 2 as long as nothing is transferred to the accumulator. (Think about 'SLA' if A = 80H).

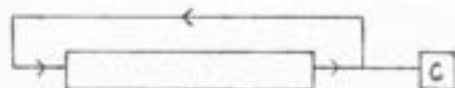
RIGHT ROTATIONS:

Once again we have the two basic modes of rotations but this time to the right. Exactly the same range of possible memory locations and rotations can be spinned to the right as to the left.

RRA	- Rotate Right Accumulator
RR r	- Rotate Right Register

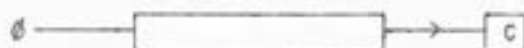


RRCA	-	Rotate Right Circular 'A'
RRC r	-	Rotate Right Circular 'r'
RRC (HL)	-	Rotate Right Circular (HL)
RRC (IX+d)	-	Rotate Right Circular (IX+d)
RRC (IY+d)	-	Rotate Right Circular (IY+d)



A similar shift right is available as for shift left:

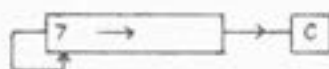
SRL r - Shift Right Logical Register 'r'



In this case this is pure division by 2 as long as we are using unsigned numbers (ie, the number range we wish to represent is 0 - 255).

Because in some applications we use the convention to indicate negative numbers by setting bit 7 to 1 (ie, giving us a range of -128 to +127) there is an addition shift right instruction called

SRA r - Shift Right Arithmetic 'r'



As you can see this is also a division by 2 but it preserves the sign bit.



In and Out

In and out are just about as simple a concept as you could get in machine language programming.

There are times when the CPU needs to get information from the outside world ("No CPU is an island?"), such as from the keyboard or from the cassette player.

As far as the CPU is concerned that's totally foreign territory and as all good CPUs it will never leave home. The most it is prepared to do is to open a door to allow deliveries. The CPU doesn't know and doesn't care to know how a cassette player works.

All the relevant information is which door the cassette man is going to be delivering his goodies to - there is a choice of up to 256 doors for the Z80 chip but the actual number available to a particular CPU is a result of decisions made by the hardware manufacturers. As far as the Sinclair is concerned there is only the keyboard, the printer and the cassette player.

The other thing the CPU doesn't want to know about is how the data is being transmitted. As far as it's concerned, if it's coming in or going out, it's an 8-bit byte.

The keyboard and the cassette player are both on the other side of door FEH (254 in decimal), so that to get data in from the keyboard you use the instruction

```
IN A,(FE)
```

Now you may be asking yourselves how the 40 keys of the keyboard are arranged so as to be represented by 8-bit bytes.

The answer is not what you would expect - the keyboard only returns information from 5 keys at a time. It is the value of 'A' as the door is opened which determines which set of 5 keys are going to be examined!

The keyboard is divided into 4 rows, each comprising two blocks of 5 keys:

3 =)	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	(=4
2 =)	Q	W	E	R	T	Q	U	I	O	P	(=5
1 =)	A	S	D	F	G	H	J	K	L	N/L	(=6
0 =)	SFT	Z	X	C	V	B	N	M	.	SPC	(=7

You can see that there are 8 blocks of letters and we should therefore be able to correlate this with the 8 bits of 'A'.

This is in fact the case:

All of the bits of 'A' are set to 'ON' except for one bit which specifies the block to be read.

You can think of it as something like a secret handshake - as the CPU goes to the door to get the information the handshake determines which piece of information it gets.

Thus to read the keys in the block "1 2 3 4 5", it is bit 3 of 'A' which should be off:

A = 1 1 1 1 0 1 1 1 = F7

The contents of the keyboard are returned in 'A' with the information coming into the lower bits of 'A':

ie. Key '1' -> Bit 0 of 'A'
Key '2' -> Bit 1 of 'A'

If block 4 was chosen instead (ie. A = EFH) then the information would come in as:

Key '0' -> Bit 0 of 'A'
Key '9' -> Bit 1 of 'A'

You can think of the information coming into 'A' from the outside edges first, so that both '0' and '1' would both go to bit '0' of register 'A'.

For some games applications you may wish to allow all of the top row to be read, and it is possible to read it all in one instruction (rather than the two instructions which would be required if we read one block at a time).

This is done by fooling the doorman into giving you two lots of information at once:

eg. A = 1 1 1 0 0 1 1 1 = E7

Note that both bits '3' and '4' are 'OFF'

This handshake tells the doorman that the CPU wants the information from block 3 and block 4, and that is what it will get. Of course the two lots of information get jumbled and it is not possible for you to tell whether key '0' or key '1' was pressed, for example - both would set bit 0 of 'A'.

ie. '1' or '0' -> Bit 0 of A
'2' or '9' -> Bit 1 of A
etc.

This is useful in movement games because it enables keys '5' and '8' to be used as the left and right direction arrows even though they belong to different blocks in the keyboard.

Note that if you use the instruction

IN r, (C)

where register C specifies which door you want, then it is the contents of register B which define which keyboard block is being selected.

The other doors which may be of interest to you are obviously the cassette input/output doors.

This is still door FE, as mentioned above. The major problem involved is the timing of the data going out and going in; this kind of problem requires a lot of experience with machine language programming and calculations of the time required for each instruction path.

The OUT instruction is also used to generate sound on the Spectrum and to set the border colour.

Page 160 of the Spectrum manual discusses the BASIC OUT instruction, and machine code programming of the OUT command is exactly the same. In other words, bits 0, 1 and 2 define the border colour, bit 3 sends a pulse out to the MIC and EAR sockets, while bit 4 sends a pulse to the internal loudspeaker.

To change the border colour, load A with the appropriate colour value and then execute the OUT (FE),A instruction. Note that this is only a TEMPORARY change in border colour. To change the border colour permanently, you must perform the above OUT instruction and also change the value of the memory location 23624, which is the operating system's variable BORDCR (see page 174 of Spectrum manual).

The reason for this is that the hardware in the Spectrum (the ULA chip in the Spectrum) controls the border colour, and that it obtains its information by looking at the contents of that memory location. You can stop the hardware from messing about with the border colour only if you disable all interrupts (DI instruction). Note that some of the subroutines in the ROM re-enable interrupts (EI instruction).

Creating your own sound:

You can create your own sound on the Spectrum, but there are some limitations due to the hardware construction for users with only 16K of RAM.

Because the screen is constantly being updated, the hardware regularly interrupts the Z80 from performing its tasks in order to show what is on the display file. This is done by bringing the WAIT line low.

The effect of this is that any program that requires exact or regular timing is impossible as it is not possible to predict the timing effects of these WAIT interruptions. The design of the Spectrum is such that the Z80 is only interrupted if the Z80 is trying to process information contained in the first 16K of RAM. No such interruptions occur if the program and data the Z80 is accessing is in the ROM or in the upper 32K of memory.

To summarise this in layman's terms: you can produce sounds and noises using the OUT command if you have a 16K machine, but not pure notes. (It is possible to get around this by calling the ROM's BEEP routine - see the chapter on the Spectrum's features).

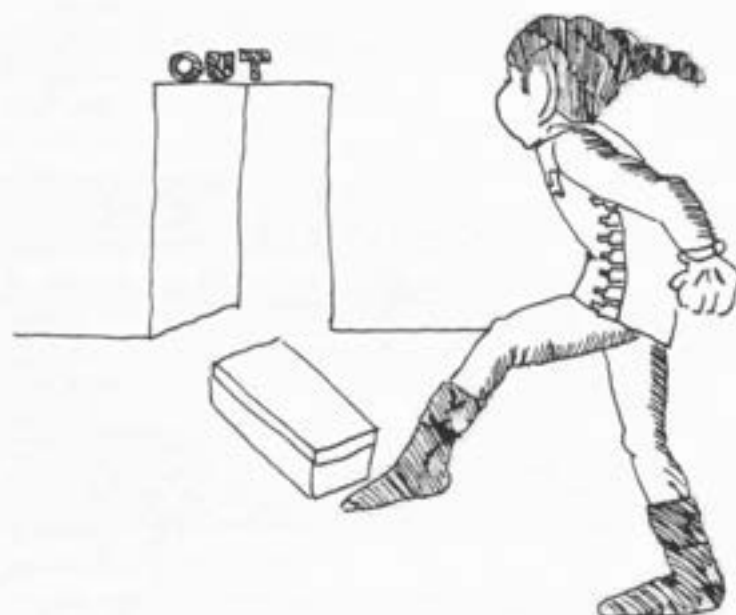
To create sound, you need to send a pulse to turn on the loudspeaker (and/or MIC socket if it is to be amplified). Then a little while later, you need to send another pulse to turn it off. Then a little while later, on again, ...

In this way sound is created. The total length of time between turning the loudspeaker on and the next time you turn it on again determines the frequency of the sound. The length of time you leave the pulse ON, as opposed to the total time between pulses can give you a minimal degree of control over volume.

Note that you must use a value of A for on and off such that the border colour remains unchanged. Otherwise, you will get a banding pattern similar to the LOADING pattern.

Exercise:

Write a routine which simulates an ambulance siren (frequency increasing, then frequency decreasing). Note that you must sound each frequency for a short period before moving on to the next frequency.



BCD Representation

BCD stands for binary-coded decimal. This is a way of representing information in decimal format.

In order to encode each of the digits from 0 to 9, only four bits are necessary and six of the possible codes will not be used in this representation.

Since four bits are needed to encode a decimal digit, two digits may be encoded in every byte. This is called BCD representation.

eg. 00000000 is BCD representation for decimal 00.
10011001 is BCD representation for decimal 99. What is the BCD representation for "58"? "10"?
Is "10100000" a valid BCD representation?

BCD ARITHMETIC

This strange convention in representing numbers can lead to potential problems in addition and subtraction.

Try adding the following

	BCD	08	0000 1000
+	BCD	03	0000 0011

	BCD	11	0000 1011

You will notice that the result of the second operation is wrong and is an invalid BCD number. To compensate, a special instruction, "DAA", called "decimal adjust arithmetic" must be used to adjust the result of the addition. (ie. Add 6 if the result is greater than 9).

The next problem is illustrated by the same example. The carry will be generated from the lower BCD digit (the right-most one) into the left-most one. This internal carry must be taken into account and added to the second BCD digit.

The "half carry flag ", H is used to detect this carry.

LD	A,	12H	;load literal BCD "12"
ADD	A,	24H	;add literal BCD "24"
DAA			;decimal adjust result
LD	(addr),	A	;store result

You will be unlikely to use BCD representation in your programming. But it is good to know that the Z80 chip still supports this representation and the DAA instruction will make the life of a small group of BCD users simpler.

Interrupts

An interrupt is a signal sent to the microprocessor, which may occur at any time and will generally suspend the execution of the current program (without the program knowing it).

Three interruption mechanisms are provided on the Z80: the bus request(BUSRQ), the non-maskable interrupt(NMI) and the usual interrupt(INT).

From programming point of view, we will only look into the usual maskable interrupt (INT).

The DI (disable interrupt) instruction is used to reset (mask), while the EI (enable interrupt) instruction is used to set (unmask).

Generally, an ordinary interrupt will result in the current program counter pushed onto the stack followed by a branch of execution to the zero page of the ROM by the RST instruction. A RETI (return from interrupt) instruction is required to return from the interrupt.

In normal operation, the Spectrum has interrupts enabled (EI), and in fact the programme is interrupted 50 times per second. This interrupt allows the keyboard to be scanned by the ROM's routine.

You may wish to disable interrupts in your programs as this will speed execution. You can still read the keyboard as long as you use your own routine to do so.

Be sure to enable interrupts when you finish from your program, as otherwise the system will not be able to read the keyboard!

Restarts

This is rather a "leftover" from the 8080 implemented for compatibility. That is why you will be unlikely to use RST instructions in your program.

The RST performs the same actions as a call, but allows a jump to only one of eight addresses in the first 256 memory locations: 00H, 08H, 10H, 18H, 20H, 28H, 30H or 38H.

The advantage of the RST instruction is that frequently called subroutines can be called using only one byte. The RST instruction also takes less time than a CALL instruction.

The disadvantage of RST instruction is that it can only be used to call one of the above eight possible locations.

As all those locations are within the ROM, you cannot gain this advantage in your own programs. It is possible however to make use of the ROM's subroutines if you know what they do, and thus use the RST instructions.

You will be able to know more about the RST instructions from our book "UNDERSTANDING YOUR SPECTRUM" by Dr Ian Logan.

Programming Your Spectrum

Planning Your Program

Machine language programming is extremely flexible in that it allows you to do anything at all.

Since all the higher level languages ultimately have to come down to machine language, it follows that anything you can program in Fortran or Cobol or any other language can be done in machine language.

With the additional benefit that the machine language program will be the faster one.

This total flexibility can however also be a trap to the unwary programmer. With so much freedom, it is possible to do anything. Unlike the SPECTRUM's BASIC operating system, for example, there are no checks on whether the statement is a legal one.

Since all numbers you can enter will be an instruction of one kind or another, the Z80 chip will process everything.

But even beyond the problems of checking whether the syntax is legal, machine language programming has no constraints on your logic - you can perform functions, jumps, etc. which would be totally illegal in any higher level language.

It is therefore of the utmost importance to discipline yourself in the design of machine language programming. I cannot recommend too highly the concept of the 'top-down' approach in programming in general, but especially in machine language programming.

The 'top-down' approach forces you to break down the problem into smaller units, and enables you to check the logic of your design without doing any coding for a long time.

Suppose you wanted to write a lunar lander program:
The very first approach might be something along the lines

INSTR	Display instructions Jump back to INSTR till ENTER pressed
DRAW	Draw landscape, start Lander at top
LAND	Move Lander If fuel finished go to CRASH Jump back to LAND if not ground
GROUND	Print Congratulations Jump back to INSTR for next GO
CRASH	Print commiserations on bad landing Jump back to INSTR for next GO

Notice how this 'program' is written totally in English. At this stage, no decision has been made whether the program is to be written in BASIC or machine language. Nor is it necessary to make that decision - the concept of the Lunar Lander program is not dependent on the coding.

Now comes the part of logic testing.

You play the part of the computer and see if all the possibilities you wish to see included in the program are covered.

Are there any jumps to things you meant to write in but forgot? Is everything there? Are some routines redundant? Should some of the things be put into subroutines?

Let us look at the 'program' again - oh, oh: we forgot to allow any way to finish the program!

The above logic might be fine for some applications, such as an arcade machine, but in your program you may decide you would like to be able to turn the program off.

We now change the last part of the program as follows:

```
GROUND      Print Congratulations
              Jump to Finish
CRASH        Print commiserations on bad landing
FINISH       Ask player if finished
              If not, jump to INSTR
              If yes, STOP
```

Note that we have used labels to describe certain lines in the program. These are very valuable, the more so if you choose short labels which are descriptive in their meaning.

Once this level is finished, you move one level down to do the same thing to one of the lines or modules above.

This is why this approach is called the top down approach.

For example we can expand the 'finish' module above:

```
FINISH       Clear screen
              Print "Would you like to stop now?"
              Scan keyboard for input
              If input = yes then stop
              Jump to INSTR
```

The other benefit of the top down approach is that you can test and run a particular module on its own, so that it is ready for the final program.

Let us go down one level further again, and look at the
Clear screen

line in more detail.

By this stage we do have to decide on what language we will write the program in, and let us choose machine language on the Sinclair.

If you were writing in BASIC, all you would have to say is:

900 CLS

but in machine language that simple sentence, 'Clear screen' can be deceptive.)

We might therefore do something like:

```
CLEAR          Find screen beginning
               Fill next 6144 positions with blanks
```

We still haven't done any coding, but obviously the approach is based on machine language. Let's look more closely at exactly what this clear screen routine is meant to do and what it will actually do.

You may recall from the Spectrum manual that the screen is made up of 6144 locations, and that there are a further 768 locations which describe the attributes of the screen - paper colour, ink colour, and so on.

The short program description above will indeed clear the screen portion, but does not have any effect on the attribute file. If not all the screen has the same paper colour, or if some character positions have flashing or bright set 'on', then the clear screen routine above will clearly be inadequate.

We need to work on the attribute file as well. (Note how much more complex certain tasks can be in machine language than in BASIC.)

We therefore need to expand the program to read

```
Find screen beginning
Load next 6144 bytes with blanks
Find attribute file beginning
Load next 768 bytes with paper/ink desired
```

The next level down is the one where you must finally do the coding, so let us look at filling the screen with blanks:

CLEAR	LD HL,SCREEN	;Screen start
	LD BC,6144	;Bytes to clear
	LD D,0	;D=blank
LOOP	LD (HL),D	;Fill blank
	INC HL	;Next position
	DEC BC	;Reduce count
	LD A,B	
	OR C	;Test if BC = 0
	JR NZ,LOOP	;Again if not end

Now you can deal with programs of such length quite easily and in this way build up very complex programs indeed.
By the way, you no doubt understand now why machine language programs tend to be so long and why people invented the higher language programs!

Exercises:

There are more ways than one to write any particular routines, so let us look at the simple clear screen routine written above.

This could be handled by several different approaches.

Exercise 1:

Can you think of a way that would enable the loop to blank 6144 positions without using the BC register, but using the B register only so that we may make use of the 'DJNZ' instruction?

Exercise 2:

Can you think of a way that would enable the 6144 positions to be blanked using the more powerful 'LDIR' instruction?

Think carefully of what 'LDIR' does: it is not always necessary to have 6144 blank positions elsewhere!

Answers:

More than one possible answer can be "right" - the only test is does it work? In other words does it do what YOU want?

Using DJNZ:

CLEAR	LD HL,SCREEN	
	LD A,0	
	LD B,24	;Set B=24
BIGLOOP	PUSH BC	;save value
	LD B,A	;Set B=256
LITLOOP	LD (HL),A	;
	INC HL	;Fill in 256 blanks
	DJNZ LITLOOP	
	POP BC	;Get back value of B
	DJNZ BIGLOOP	;Do it until end

We have been able to use 24 times 256 (=6144) to clear the screen.

Points of note are:

We can set B = 0 to go through the DJNZ loop 256 times. (Why?)

This procedure would not normally be used in a program unless we were also using register C for other purposes.

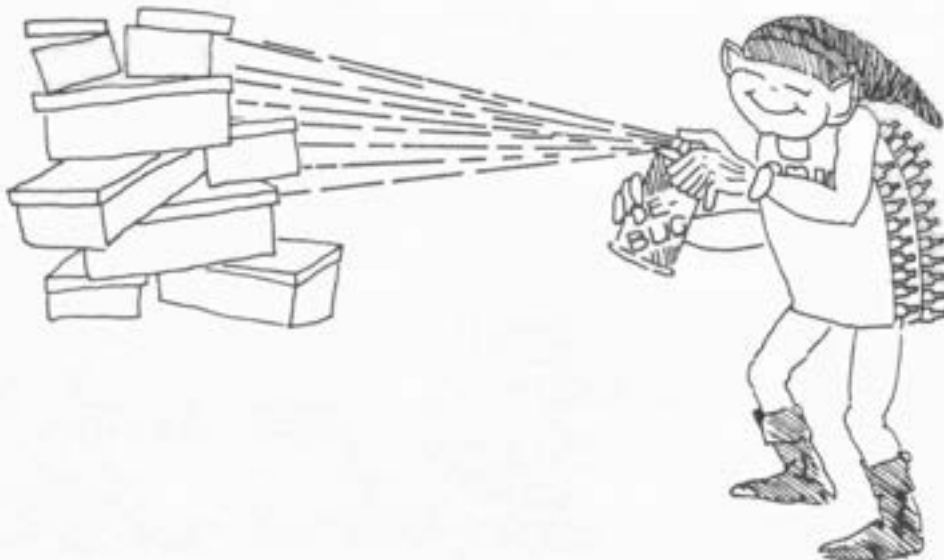
Using LDIR:

CLEAR	LD HL,SCREEN	;Source
	PUSH HL	
	POP DE	
	INC DE	;DEST = HL + 1
	LD BC,6144	;How Many
	LD (HL),0	;1st POS = 0
	LDIR	;Move it

Note that we have found $DE = HL + 1$ by getting $DE = HL$ and increasing DE. This can be achieved more easily by loading the value of SCREEN +1 into DE directly but this requires 1 more byte!

The reason this LDIR works is because we are using the fact that the data is overwriting the block to be written as we proceed. This is using in a positive manner the problem we discussed in the Block Move Chapter.

If you add up the memory required, the first method requires 14 bytes, the second 16 bytes, and the last 13 bytes.



Features of the Spectrum

It is time then to have a look into features of your ZX Spectrum that are useful when you develop machine language programs for it.

Input - keyboard

As far as input to the Spectrum is concerned, we will ignore cassette input and concentrate on the keyboard.

The keyboard is the only input which provides real-time communication. It can dynamically affect the processing of any program, either the operating system in ROM or the user's program in RAM.

Logically we can see the keyboard as a two dimensional matrix with eight rows and five columns as in appendix A.

Each of the forty intersections represents a key of the keyboard. In their normal state (when they are not pressed), they are always in a high mood ie. the intersection is set as 1.

When a particular key is pressed and "pressurized" the intersection corresponding to that key will be reset to a low mood ie. 0.

Knowing the relationship between the keyboard and this inner matrix representation, we can derive a logical way of testing key pressing which can be used in machine language programming.

In BASIC, when we scan the keyboard we need to provide an address for that particular half row of keyboard where the desired key resides before using the IN function as described in chapter 23 (p 160) of the Spectrum manual.

Similarly, in a machine language program, we need to load into the accumulator a value corresponding to the address of the half row of keys we want to test. The required value for each half row is listed in the leftmost column of the table in appendix A.

eg. For the "H - ENTER" half-row we load A with value BFH

```
LD A, BFH
```

The value in A will then be used to fetch the byte which contains the state of that particular half-row of keys and return to A when the INPUT instruction is issued.

eg. The port used is the FEH port

```
IN A, (FEH)
```

Since there are five keys per half row, we are only interested in the five low order bits of the returned byte in A.

If no key is pressed in that half-row, the value of the low order five bits will be ($2^{**}4 + 2^{**}3 + 2^{**}2 + 2^{**}1 + 2^{**}0$ ie. $16 + 8 + 4 + 2 + 1 = 31$).

register A = xxx11111 when no key is pressed.

If we want to test whether the rightmost bit is pressed, we check to see whether that bit is low.

There are two ways to test that:

- i. Use Bit test instructions, eg BIT 0, A
If the bit is low (not set) then the Zero flag will be set.
- ii. Use Logical AND instructions AND 1
If the bit is low (not set) then the result will be zero and the Zero flag will be set.

The first method is easier because the particular bit we want to test is specified directly in the Bit-test instruction. But it has a shortfall in that if we want to test two keys of that half-row we will need to use two Bit-test instructions and possibly two relative jumps.

eg. To test bit 0 and bit 1 using the first method

```
BIT 0, A      ;test bit 0 of A set or not
JR Z, NPRESS  ;jump if not pressed
BIT 1, A      ;test bit 1 of A set or not
JR Z, NPRESS  ;jump if not pressed
.
.
do whatever if both are pressed
.
NPRESS .
.
```

The second method of testing using logical AND requires a little more logic. To test bit 0 we use "AND 1"; to test bit 1 we use "AND 2"; to test bit 2 we use "AND 4" and so on.

To test two keys, we use "AND x" where x is the sum of the value we will use when testing each one key individually.

eg. To test both bit 0 and bit 1 of A are set:

```
AND    3      ;test both bit 0 and bit 1
          ;is set
CP     3      ;test if both set
```

```

JR      NZ,NBOTH    ;jump if not both pressed
.
.

```

To test if either bit 0 or bit 1 of A are set

```

AND     3           ;test either bit 0 and bit
                   ;1 is set
JR      Z,NOTONE    ;jump if not one is pressed
.
.

```

Exercise:

To summarise what we have learnt relating to the keyboard, can you code a machine language subroutine trapping the (ENTER) key pressed for your Spectrum.

You will need to

- a. check the row address that needs to be loaded into A.
- b. send it to the input port FEH.
- c. test the bit that is set by the (ENTER) key.

Output - Video Screen display

The Video screen display is the main source of output for the computer to communicate to the user.

The following machine language program will demonstrate the way the screen memory of the Spectrum is organised:

```
210040  LD  HL,4000H      ;load HL with start of
                        ;display file
36FF    LD  (HL), FFH    ;fill that screen location
110140  LD  DE,4001H    ;load DE with next byte
                        ;in display
010100  LD  BC,1        ;BC contains number of
                        ;bytes to be transferred
EDB0    LDIR           ;move a block length BC
                        ;from (HL) to (DE)
C9      RET            ;end of program
```

Load the above program into your Spectrum and run the machine code program. The way it is written above, one byte only will be transferred from (HL) to (DE).

Now change the fourth line to read LD BC, 31 (011F00). You may be surprised at which are the first 32 bytes of the screen display. Note how a very thin line has been drawn across the top of the screen. The first 32 bytes of the screen memory relate to the first byte of each of the first 32 characters.

Now change that line to read LD BC,255 (01FF00). Again you may be surprised. The next byte after the 32nd one is not on the second row of dots on the screen! It is the first byte of the 32nd character! And so on up to the 256th character.

Are you prepared to predict where the next byte would go? Change that line to LD BC, 2047 (01FF07) and run the program. You will find that the top third of the screen only has been filled.

You can experiment with this, using different values for BC up to LD BC, 6143 (01FF17). In this way you can watch the way Spectrum organises the screen.

The screen memory is actually divided into three lots.

- i. Memory 4000H - 47FFH (===) first eight lines.
- ii. Memory 4800H - 4FFFH (===) second eight lines.
- iii. Memory 5000H - 57FFH (===) third eight lines.

Not only that, but you will recall that each character of the Spectrum is composed of eight 8-bit bytes which makes up 64 dots.

eg. For the character " ! ", its character representation is

0	00000000	0H
16	00010000	10H
16	00010000	10H
16	00010000	10H
16	00010000	10H
0	00000000	0H
16	00010000	10H
0	00000000	0H

The organisation of the Spectrum screen display memory is such that the first 256 bytes from 4000H to 40FFH correspond to the first byte of each of the 256 8-byte character of the first eight lines.

Then the next 256 bytes from memory location 4100H to 41FFH correspond to the second byte of each of the 256 8-byte character of the first eight lines and so on.

Thus, the memory location of the eight bytes corresponding to the first character of the screen is:

1st byte	4000H
2nd byte	4100H
3rd byte	4200H
4th byte	4300H
5th byte	4400H
6th byte	4500H
7th byte	4600H
8th byte	4700H

Strange, isn't it? But we have to accept the Spectrum the way it is built.

Can you write down the eight bytes that correspond to the 31st character of the third line of the screen? You can refer to Appendix B, the screen memory map. (405EH, 415EH, 425EH, ..., 475EH).

To follow on the concept we have developed about the screen display, the memory locations that correspond to the first character of the second eight lines lot is:

4800H, 4900H, 4A00H, 4B00H, 4C00H, 4D00H, 4E00H, 4F00H.

Similarly, the first character of the third eight lines lot has its eight-bytes in memory locations:

5000H, 5100H, 5200H, 5300H, 5400H, 5500H, 5600H, 5700H.

There are some advantages, however, in using machine language. The apparent complexities are worth overcoming. As a trivial example, in BASIC, if you try to PRINT into the input section of the screen (the bottom two lines), the BASIC system will object most violently. But in machine language you have full access to the

whole screen.

If you observe the screen display organisation more closely, you will see that the High Order Byte of First Byte (HOBFB) of each character determines which lot of the three memory portions the character is in.

For example, if 40H =(HOBFB (41H	char is in first eight lines lot
if 48H =(HOBFB (49H	char is in second eight lines lot
if 50H =(HOBFB (51H	char is in third eight lines lot

Not only that, the low order three bits of the HOB (High Order Byte) determines which byte of the eight bytes of the character it belongs.

Things starting to blurr now? Turn to appendix B and try to observe the relationship between memory locations and the display screen (if any?!!).

Try the following example,:

Suppose we are given an address as 4A36H. The High Order Byte of the address is 4AH so:

- i. we know that it is within the screen display memory since its value is in between 40H and 58H.
- ii. its binary representation is 01001010
- iii. from the lower three bits we know that it belongs to the third byte of a character position on the screen.
- iv. if we made the lower three bits zero, then the value of the HOB would be 48H. Thus we know this belongs to the second eight lines lot, ie the middle portion of the screen display.

The conclusion we can reach is that the byte given refers to the third byte of a character in the middle portion of the display memory.

Which character of the middle portion does the byte belongs to? To answer this question, we'll need to know the value of the Low Order Byte of the address.

We know the LOB of the address is 36H. So the address refers to character 36H (48+6), the 54th position away from the first character of the middle portion.

Since each line has 32 characters, the position referred to is in

the second line of the middle screen display portion and is the (54-32+1)th character of that line.

The conclusion we can make is that the byte given is the third byte of the 23rd character of the 10th line from the start of the screen.

Exercise:

Which byte of which character does the address 564FH refer to?

Exercise:

Can you write a short routine to write an exclamation mark to the screen? The bytes that make up this character are given above.

Output - Video display attribute

The display attribute memory is easier to understand than the display memory because it has a one-to-one relationship with the screen display characters.

The attribute file is located in memory from 5800H to 5AFFH. It is 768 bytes, which correspond to 24 lines of 32 character each. In other words, there is one attribute byte for each character position.

Thus, 5800H corresponds to the attribute of the first character of the first line, 5801H the second character, 5802H the third, ... 581FH the thirty second character of the first line.

Similarly, 5820H holds the attribute of the first character of the second line, 5840H of the third line, ... and 5AE0H the attribute of the first character of the last line of the screen.

We know that for each character position on the screen, there is a corresponding attribute byte in the attribute memory, made up as follows:

attribute byte	b b bbb bbb
bit 0 - 2	represents the ink colour of the character 0 to 7.
bit 3 - 5	represents the paper colour of the character 0 to 7.
bit 6	Bright if 1, normal if 0.
bit 7	Flash if 1, not flash if 0.

Exercise:

What is the address of the attribute byte that corresponds to the first byte of the middle screen section? What is the address for the first byte of the third section? Answers are given on the next page, but try to work it out for yourself.

Exercise:

Can you write a subroutine that converts a given address on the screen to its corresponding attribute address.
eg. 4529H

You must in effect determine which character of this screen this belongs to, and then add this to 5800H.

The following program shows a short method of achieving this:

LD HL, 4529H	;load the given address to HL
LD A, H	;load the high order byte to A
AND 18H	;trap bits 3 and 4 to
	;determine which portion of the
	;screen the address belongs
SRA A	;shift right accumulator
SRA A	;three times - ie divide by 8
SRA A	;result can either be 0,1 or 2
	;depending whether H was
	; 48H, 50H or 50H
ADD A, 58H	;transform to attribute memory
LD H, A	;HL contain attribute address
	;ie H = 58H, 59H or 60H
	;L remains the same!!!

You may need to think about this for a while!

The way the program works is related to the answer of the first exercise:

1st char. of 1st screen section = 4000H	Attribute address = 5800H
1st char. of 2nd screen section = 4800H	Attribute address = 5900H
1st char. of 3rd screen section = 5000H	Attribute address = 5A00H

2nd char. of 1st screen section = 4801H	Attribute address = 5901H
etc. ...	
	etc. ...

This should make things a little clearer!

Output - Sound

Another real time communication that your Spectrum microcomputer offers is sound. It would be a waste if we didn't make full use of this facility.

In machine language on the Spectrum, there are two major ways of generating sound.

- i. Sending signals to the cassette output port 254 for certain duration of time using the OUT instruction 254.
eg. OUT (254), A
- ii. Set HL, DE to certain values and call the ROM sound routine used to generate sound.

The input parameters are:

DE - duration in sec * frequency
HL - (437,500 / frequency) - 30.125

Then

CALL 03B5H.

The first way of sound generation has the advantage of being free from any ROM calls. It is shorter in terms of time to execute. But ... there is always a BUT!

Since the ULA is constantly accessing the first 16K memory of the RAM to perform the video display, your program, if it resides within the first 16K, will frequently be temporarily interrupted.

If the program is generating sound, the sound will be in bursts of unpredictable duration. One solution is to move the part of the program that generates sound to the higher memory region if you have a 48K machine.

If you haven't got a 48K machine, then you can still generate sound using this method, but it will not be 'clean sound'. You have to use the second method of sound generation (of calling the ROM routine) to get that result.

Note that as we send values to output port 254, it will also affect the border colour, and turn the MIC on, as well as the loudspeaker depending on what value is sent. Refer to chapter 23 (p 160) of your Spectrum user manual.

On the other hand, the ROM routine for generating sound in effect allows you to use the BEEP command from your machine language program. You can think of the DE register pair as holding a value for the duration of the sound, and HL a value for the frequency. Experiment with different values for HL and DE until you get the sound you want.

The limitation of this method of course is that you are restricted to whatever sounds you can create with the BEEP command.

Monitor Programs

EZ-Code Machine Language Editor

This is a machine code monitor program that allows you to:

- i. INPUT your machine language program module in
either a fully assembled format
or a semi-assembled format with all relative
jump and absolute jumps expressed in the
form of line number.
- ii. LIST the source input program module.
- iii. DUMP the input program module into the specified
memory address.
- iv. EXAMINE a range of memory locations.
- v. SAVE EITHER the "source module"
OR the dumped program in fully machine
code format.
- vi. LOAD a saved "source program" from the cassette.
- vii. RUN the dumped machine program module.

PREREQUISITE for the EZ-code

Before using this monitor program to input any machine language programs, you must assemble your assembly language program. You do not need to calculate relative or absolute jumps!

Your program module must not be greater than 800 bytes or more than 200 instructions.

You cannot load the final program below memory 31499 (in order not to wipe off the EZ-code program.)

CONCEPT behind the EZ-code

The concept behind this program is to enable you to enter machine code instruction in a numbered line format, much like the listing of a BASIC program.

Each line of the "source program" (the name of the lines of machine

code) has a line number and up to 4 bytes of machine code.

A major benefit is therefore the ability to "edit" any line. The "source program" can also be SAVED separately to tape, allowing work in progress to be saved.

A major innovation in this program is the ability to insert relative jumps or absolute jumps without having to calculate the numbers involved in any jump can be made by referring to the line number you wish to jump to!

This means that changes can be made without problems even within the scope of a relative jump.

The machine code of the "source program" is transferred to memory by the "dump" command. The resulting machine code can also be SAVED to memory.

EZ-code Instruction Summary

Note that the first question the program will ask you is

"Loading address".

This is the address where you wish the machine code program to go. This cannot be below 31500.

**** Entering LINES ****

i. To ENTER lines of "source program":

(line-no)(blank)(maximum of 4 bytes in Hexadecimal)
(ENTER)

eg. 1 210040 will insert the machine code instruction
LD HL,4000H into line number 1.

ii. To EDIT a line:

(line-no)(blank)(retype new bytes)(ENTER)

eg. 1 210140 will change line number 1 to the instruction
LD HL,4001H.

iii. To DELETE an instruction line:

(line-no)(ENTER)

eg. 1 (ENTER) will delete line number 1.

iv. To specify RELATIVE or ABSOLUTE jump

(line-no)(blank)(jump instruction)("lower case "L")
(line-no)(ENTER)

eg. 1 c3l2 represents the instruction JP to line 2.

2 18l1 represents the instruction JR to line 1.

***** COMMANDs *****

i. dump(ENTER)

- * dump the source listing into the memory starting from the specified LOADING address.
- * this must be done before running the machine code program.

abbreviation: du

ii. exit(ENTER)

- * exit from the EZ-code and re-enter BASIC system.

abbreviation: ex

iii. list(ENTER)

- * list the first twenty-two instruction lines of the source listing.
- * press any key except "m" and "BREAK" to continue listing

abbreviation: li

list#(ENTER)

- * list twenty-two lines of the source listing starting from line number #, a number between 1 and 200 inclusively.

abbreviation: NO ABBREV

iv. load(ENTER)

- * load a source listing module from the cassette replacing the existing module.

abbreviation: lo

v. mem(ENTER)

prompt: Starting address:

- * enter memory address you want to start displaying from.
- * can be from 0 to 32767 for 16K Spectrum or 0 to 65535 for 48K Spectrum.
- * press "m" to exit memory examine mode.

abbreviation: me

vi. new(ENTER)

- * clear the current module and re-run the EZ-code.
- * this is useful when you want to start coding in another program module.

abbreviation: ne

vii.run(ENTER)

- * run the dumped program module from LOADING address you specified when you start running the EZ-code program or when you LOAD a new source listing.

abbreviation: ru

viii.save(ENTER)

- * save either the source listing or dumped machine code onto cassette.

prompt: Enter name:

enter the name you want to use.

Source or Machine code: (s or m)

enter s for source listing saving

enter m for machine code saving

Start tape, then press any key.

make sure that the cassette lead is properly wound.

press any key when the cassette is ready.

abbreviation: sa

NOTES

1. If you don't want the result of BC register returned after running, change line 3090 to :
3090 IF k\$="ru" THEN LET L=USR R
2. To restart the EZ-code :
Either use RUN and resulting with all variables reinitialised
Or use GOTO 2020 which returns the prompt
"Command or Line(###): ".
3. All numeric entry except machine instruction code has to be in decimal format.
4. To enable you to insert additional lines in the current listing, it is good to space out the listing.
ie. instead of entering instruction lines as 1, 2, 3
enter as 1, 5, 10 etc.
This will makes the input of the module more flexible.

EXERCISE on EZ-code

Enter the following codes.

```
210040      LD  HL,4000H      ;fill screen
110140      LD  DE,4001H
01FF17      LD  BC,6143
3EFF        LD  A,  OFFH
77          LD  (HL), A
EDB0        LDIR
3E7F  LOOP: LD  A,  7FH      ;trap BREAK key
DBFE        IN  A,(OFEH)
E601        AND 1
20F8        JR  NZ, LOOP
C9          RET
```

To enter the above code using EZ-code:

(RUN)

Loading address: 31500(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 1 210040(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 5 110140(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 10 01ff17(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 15 3eff(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 20 77(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 25 edb0(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 30 3e7f(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 35 dbfe(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 40 e601(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): 45 20130(ENTER)

(This is 20 then lower case "L", then 30. In other words
JR NZ, line 30)

Command or Line(###): 50 c9(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): list(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): dump(ENTER)

Command or Line(###): mem(ENTER)

Starting address: 31500(ENTER)

m (this is the key to exit the memory
display mode)

Command or Line(###): run(ENTER)

(BREAK)

Note how there must be a space after the line numbers.

EZCODE

Copyright (c) 1982 by William Tang and A.M.Sullivan

```

100 REM machine
110 REM machine_code_monitor
120 GO TO 9000
130 DEF FN d(s$) = (s$ > "9")*( CODE s$-55)
      +(s$ <= "9")*( CODE s$-48)-(s$ > "9")*32
140 DEF FN o(O$) = ((O$ = "ca")+ (O$ = "da")
      +(O$ = "ea")+ (O$ = "fa")+ (O$ = "c2")
      +(O$ = "d2")+ (O$ = "e2")+ (O$ = "f2")
      +(O$ = "c3"))-((O$ = "38")+ (O$ = "30")
      +(O$ = "28")+ (O$ = "20")+ (O$ = "18")
      +(O$ = "10"))
1000 REM
1010 REM  INV LINE_PRINTING_routine TRU
1020 CLS : PRINT AT ze, 25; INVERSE on; FLASH on; "LISTING TRU "
1030 LET F = ze : PRINT AT ze, ze;
1040 FOR J = pl1 TO pl2
1050 IF C$(J, on) = "^^" THEN GO TO 1110
1060 PRINT TAB tr- LEN STR$ J; J; TAB fr; "^";
1070 IF C$(J, tw, on TO on) = "1"
      THEN PRINT C$(J, on)+"^"+C$(J, tw)+C$(J, tr)
      : GO TO 1090
1080 PRINT C$(J, on); "^"; C$(J, tw); "^"
      ; C$(J, tr); "^"; C$(J, fr)
1090 LET F = F+on
1100 IF F = 22 THEN GO TO 1120
1110 NEXT J
1120 PRINT AT ze, 25; "^^^^^^"
1130 RETURN
2000 REM
2010 REM  INV main_routine TRU
2020 INPUT "Command_or_Line(###) : "; A$
2030 IF A$( TO fr) = "^^^^" THEN GO TO mr
2040 IF A$(on) > "9" THEN GO TO 3000
2050 LET k$ = "" : FOR K = on TO fr
2060 IF A$(K TO K) = "^" THEN GO TO 2090
2070 LET k$ = k$+A$(K TO K)
2080 NEXT K
2090 IF K = 5 OR VAL k$ = ze OR VAL k$ > ln
      THEN GO TO mr
2100 LET J = VAL k$ : LET n = J
      : REM line_number_must_be_3_bytes
2110 LET A$ = A$(K+on TO )
2120 LET k$ = ""
2130 FOR K = on TO LEN A$
2140 IF A$(K TO K) <> "^"
      THEN LET k$ = k$+A$(K TO K)
2150 NEXT K
2160 LET A$ = k$
2162 IF A$(on) = "1" THEN GO TO mr

```

```

2170 CLS : FOR I = on TO 7 STEP tw
2180 LET K = INT (I/tw+on)
2190 LET C$(J, K) = A$(I TO I+on)
2200 NEXT I
2210 IF C$(n, on) = "^^" THEN GO TO 2250
2220 IF n < TP THEN LET TP = n
2230 IF n > BP THEN LET BP = n
2240 GO TO 2320
2250 IF n <> BP THEN GO TO 2280
2260 IF BP = on OR C$(BP, on) <> "^^"
      THEN GO TO 2320
2270 LET BP = BP-on : GO TO 2260
2280 IF n <> TP THEN GO TO 2320
2290 IF C$(TP, on) <> "^^" THEN GO TO 2320
2300 IF TP <> BP AND TP <> 1n THEN LET TP = TP+on
      : GO TO 2290
2310 LET TP = on
2320 LET pp = n
2330 IF n < TP THEN LET pp = TP : GO TO 2380
2340 LET numlp = ze
2350 IF pp = TP OR numlp = 11 THEN GO TO 2380
2360 IF C$(pp, on) <> "^^"
      THEN LET numlp = numlp+on
2370 LET pp = pp-on : GO TO 2350
2380 LET pl1 = pp : LET pl2 = BP
2390 GO SUB 1000
      : REM print ^^block ^^of ^^lines
2400 GO TO mr
3000 REM
3010 REM INV Commands***** IRU
3020 LET k$ = A$( TO tw)
3030 IF k$ = "du" THEN GO TO 5000
3040 IF k$ = "ex" THEN STOP
3050 IF k$ = "li" THEN GO TO 4000
3060 IF k$ = "lo" THEN GO TO 7000
3070 IF k$ = "me" THEN GO TO 6000
3080 IF k$ = "ne" THEN RUN
3090 IF k$ = "ru" THEN PRINT USR R
3100 IF k$ = "sa" THEN GO TO 8000
3110 GO TO mr
4000 REM
4010 REM INV List ^^routine***** IRU
4020 LET pl1 = TP : LET pl2 = BP
4030 LET n1 = CODE A$(6 TO 6)
4040 IF LEN A$ > fr AND n1 > 47 AND n1 < 58
      THEN LET pl1 = VAL A$(5 TO 8)
4050 GO SUB 1000
4060 GO TO mr
5000 REM
5010 REM INV DUMP ^^routine***** IRU
5020 CLS : PRINT AT ze, 25: INK on: INVERSE on
      : FLASH on: "DUMPING" : LET G = R

```

```

5030 PRINT AT on, ze;
5040 FOR J = TP TO BP
5050 IF C$(J, on) = "▲▲" THEN GO TO 5470
5060 IF C$(J, tw, on TO on) <> "1" THEN GO TO 5380
5070 POKE G, ze : POKE G+on, ze : POKE G+tw, ze
      : POKE G+tr, ze
5080 LET j1 = VAL (C$(J, tw, tw TO tw)+C$(J, tr))
5090 PRINT TAB tr- LEN STR$ J; INVERSE on; J
      : TAB fr; INVERSE ze; "▲"
      : C$(J, on)+"▲"+C$(J, tw)+C$(J, tr)
      : " = > ";
5100 IF j1 < ze OR j1 > 1n THEN GO TO 5460
5110 LET CJ = FN O(C$(J, on))
5120 PRINT TAB 17- LEN STR$ j1; INVERSE on; j1
      : TAB 18; INVERSE ze; "▲"; C$(j1, on)
      : "▲"; C$(j1, tw); "▲"; C$(j1, tr); "▲"
      : C$(j1, fr);
5130 IF ABS CJ <> on THEN GO TO 5460
5140 LET dd = (j1 > J)-(j1 < J)
5150 LET ja = G : LET dp = ze
5160 IF j1 = J THEN GO TO 5270
5170 LET cl = J+dd
5180 LET n1 = ze : IF C$(cl, on) = "▲▲"
      THEN GO TO 5220
5190 IF C$(cl, tw, on TO on) <> "1"
      THEN LET n1 = on+(C$(cl, tw) <> "▲▲")
      +(C$(cl, tr) <> "▲▲")
      +(C$(cl, fr) <> "▲▲")
      : GO TO 5220
5200 LET TJ = FN o(C$(cl, on))
5210 LET n1 = (TJ = on)*tr+(TJ = -on)*tw
5220 IF cl = j1 AND dd > ze THEN GO TO 5270
5230 LET dp = dp+n1
5240 IF cl = j1 THEN GO TO 5270
5250 LET cl = cl+dd
5260 GO TO 5180
5270 IF CJ = on THEN LET ja = ja+dd*dp+(dd > ze)*tr
      : GO TO 5310
5280 IF dd > ze THEN LET dp = dp+2
5290 IF dp > 126 AND dd < ze THEN GO TO 5460
5300 IF dp > 129 AND dd > ze THEN GO TO 5460
5310 LET V = 16* FN d(C$(J, on, on TO on))
      + FN d(C$(J, on, tw TO tw))
5320 POKE G, V : LET G = G+on
5330 IF CJ = on THEN POKE G, ja- INT (ja/qk)*qk
      : LET G = G+on : POKE G, INT (ja/qk)
      : LET G = G+on : GO TO 5360
5340 IF dd < ze THEN LET dp = -dp
5350 LET dp = dp-tw : POKE G, dp : LET G = G+on
5360 PRINT "ok"
5370 GO TO 5470
5380 FOR I = on TO 7 STEP tw

```

```

5390 LET K = INT (I/tw+on)
5400 LET V = 16* FN d(C$(J, K, on TO on))
      + FN d(C$(J, K, tw TO tw))
5410 IF V < ze THEN GO TO 5440
5420 POKE G, V
5430 LET G = G+on
5440 NEXT I
5450 GO TO 5470
5460 PRINT "**"
5470 NEXT J
5480 PRINT AT ze, 25; "^^^^^^"
      : GO TO mr
6000 REM
6010 REM INV Memory_display***** IRU
6020 INPUT "Starting_address : "; dm
6030 CLS : PRINT AT ze, ze;
6040 LET G = dm : LET F = ze
6050 LET F = F+on
      : PRINT TAB 5- LEN STR$ G; G ; TAB 6;
6060 FOR I = on TO fr
6070 LET V = PEEK G
6080 LET H = INT (V/16)
6090 LET L = V-16*H
6100 PRINT D$(H+on); D$(L+on); " ";
6110 LET G = G+on
6120 NEXT I
6130 PRINT " "
6140 IF F <> 22 THEN GO TO 6050
6150 LET k$ = INKEY$ : IF k$ = "" THEN GO TO 6150
6160 IF k$ <> "m" AND k$ <> "M" THEN LET F = ze
      : POKE 23692, qk-on : GO TO 6050
6200 POKE 23692, on : PAUSE 20 : GO TO mr
7000 REM
7010 REM INV LOAD***** IRU
7020 CLS
7030 INPUT
      "Load_array : Press any key when ready. "
      : k$
7040 PRINT AT ze, 25; INVERSE on; FLASH on; "LOADING"
7050 LOAD "source" DATA C$()
7060 FOR I = on TO ln
7070 LET TP = I
7080 IF C$(I, on) <> "^^" THEN GO TO 7100
7090 NEXT I
7100 FOR I = ln TO on STEP -1
7110 LET BP = I
7120 IF C$(I, on) <> "^^" THEN GO TO 7140
7130 NEXT I
7140 PRINT AT ze, 25; "^^^^^^"
7150 GO TO 9150
8000 REM
8010 REM INV SAVE***** IRU

```

```

8020 INPUT "Enter name : "; n$
8030 IF n$ = "" THEN GO TO 8020
8040 INPUT
      "Source or Machine code : (s or m)"
      ; k$
8050 IF k$ <> "s" AND k$ <> "m" THEN GO TO 8040
8060 IF k$ = "s" THEN SAVE n$ DATA C$() : GO TO mr
8070 INPUT "Starting address : "; ss
8080 INPUT "Finishing address : "; sf
8090 LET sb = sf-ss+on
8100 SAVE n$ CODE ss, sb
8110 GO TO mr
9000 REM
9010 REM initialisation
9020 LET ze = PI - PI : LET on = PI / PI
      : LET tw = on+on : LET tr = on+tw
      : LET fr = tw+tw : LET qk = 256
      : LET mr = 2020 : LET ln = 200
9025 BORDER 7 : PAPER 7 : INK on : INVERSE ze
      : OVER ze : FLASH ze : BRIGHT ze
      : BEEP .25, 24 : BEEP .25, 12
9030 DIM A$(15) : DIM O$(tw)
9040 LET TP = ln : LET BP = on
      : REM line number buffer
9050 DIM C$(ln, fr, tw) : REM holds code
9060 PRINT AT ze, 20; INVERSE on; FLASH on
      ; "INITIALISING"
9070 FOR I = on TO ln
9080 FOR J = on TO fr
9090 LET C$(I, J) = " "
9100 NEXT J
9110 BEEP .01, 20
9120 NEXT I
9130 PRINT AT ze, 20; "AAAAAAAAAAAAAA"
9140 LET D$ = "0123456789ABCDEF"
9150 CLS : PRINT "Lowest address : "; 31500
9160 INPUT "Loading address : "; R : PAUSE 20
9170 IF R < 31500 THEN GO TO 9160
9180 CLS : GO TO mr

```


Hexload Machine Code Monitor

This BASIC program can be a monitor program on its own as it can be used to WRITE hexcode onto the memory, LIST memory, MOVE memory content around, SAVE the memory onto cassette and LOAD from the cassette to memory.

On the other hand we can use Hexload as a semi-linking loader for code created by the EZ-CODE program. This is because EZ-code can only be used to input small modules of less than 800 bytes and less than 200 instructions.

So for large programs, we use EZ-code to develop the modules and save each module as machine code on cassette. Then we use HexLoad, which is a much smaller BASIC program, to load these modules and link them together by moving the modules into their appropriate memory locations.

We will actually apply this technique as we develop the FREEWAY FROG program.

Concept behind Hexload

The concept behind Hexload is extremely simple.
The monitor program actually set the RAMTOP of BASIC system to 26999.

That means you can input your machine code program anywhere between memory locations 27000 to 32578 for 16K Spectrum and 27000 to 65346 for 48K Spectrum.

Hexload is a straight forward machine code monitor program.
It offers basic monitoring functions like:

WRITE	onto memory in Hex format
SAVE	from memory to cassette
LOAD	from cassette to memory
LIST	memory contents from a starting address
MOVE	memory contents from one locations to another.

Hexload Instructions Summary

1. WRITE

Write code in HEX format onto the memory.

Procedure:

- a. Input start of memory where you want to write to in decimal format in response to the prompt.

The address is limited to 27000 - 32578 for 16K
27000 - 65346 for 48K

eg. Write to address: 27000(ENTER)

- b. Enter codes in hex format.
- c. Press "m" to return to main menu.

2. SAVE

Save memory to cassette.

Procedure:

- a. Input memory from which saving starts, can be any address
0 - 32767 for 16K
0 - 65535 for 48K
- b. Input number of bytes to be saved.
- c. Input name of the module to be saved.
- d. Press any key when the cassette is ready.
- e. Option of verifying the module saved on to the cassette.
It is good to verify so as to ensure that there is no corruption of the module during the saving procedure.

3. LOAD

Load machine code module from cassette.

Procedure:

- a. Input memory address to which the module is start loading. The address is limited to same range as in write command.
- b. Enter the name used when the module is saved.
If you are not sure of the name, just press (ENTER).

4. LIST

Display memory contents starting from an address.

Procedure:

- a. Input address start listing from.
Can be any address as in SAVE command above.
- b. Type any key to continue the display.
- c. Type "m" to return to main menu.

5. MOVE

Move memory contents from start address to finish address into new memory address.

Procedure:

- a. Input move from memory, any address as in the range of SAVE command.
- b. Input move until memory, any address as in the range of SAVE command.
- c. Input move to memory, address range as in WRITE command.
- d. You can even copy the ROM into RAM by using this command.

eg. Move from memory: 0(ENTER)
Move until memory: 1000(ENTER)
Move to memory: 32000(ENTER)

this will move ROM 0 to 1000 to RAM address 32000.

NOTES: Any of the input in above commands which breaches the address range will result in the input being reprompted.

EXERCISE:

Try using this monitor to input the module we have developed with EZ-code.

HEXLOAD

Copyright (c) 1982 by William Tang and David Webb

```

100 REM
110 REM monitor program
120 CLEAR 26999 : LET ze = PI - PI
    : LET on = PI / PI : LET tw = on+on
    : LET qk = 256 : LET lm = 27000
    : LET mr = 140 : LET wl = 340
130 GO SUB 2000
140 CLS
    : PRINT "Start of machine code area = "
    : lm
150 PRINT "menu" : PRINT
    : PRINT
    : PRINT "Write machine code.....1"
160 PRINT
    : PRINT
    : PRINT "Save machine code.....2"
170 PRINT
    : PRINT
    : PRINT "Load machine code.....3"
180 PRINT
    : PRINT
    : PRINT "List machine code.....4"
190 PRINT
    : PRINT
    : PRINT "Move machine code.....5"
200 PRINT
    : PRINT
    : PRINT "Please press appropriate key."
210 LET g$ = INKEY$
220 IF g$ = "m" OR g$ = "M" THEN STOP
230 IF g$ = "" OR g$ < "1" OR g$ > "5"
    THEN GO TO 210
240 CLS
    : PRINT "Start of machine code area = "
    : lm
250 GO TO 300 : VAL g$
300 REM INV Write***** TRU
310 INPUT "Write to address +": d
320 IF d > mm OR d < lm THEN GO TO 310
330 PRINT : PRINT "Write Address +": d
    : PRINT "To return to menu enter ""m""
340 LET a$ = ""
350 IF a$ = "" THEN INPUT "Enter hex. code +":
    : a$
360 IF a$(on) = "m" OR a$(on) = "M"
    THEN GO TO mr
370 IF LEN a$/tw <> INT ( LEN a$/tw)
    THEN PRINT "Incorrect entry":
    : GO TO wl

```

```

380 LET c = ze
390 FOR f = 16 TO on STEP -15
400 LET a = CODE a$((f = 16)+tw*(f = on))
410 IF a < 48 OR a > 102 OR (a > 57 AND a < 65)
    OR (a > 70 AND a < 97)
    THEN PRINT "Incorrect entry";
    : GO TO w1
420 LET c = c+f*((a < 58)*(a-48)
    +(a > 64 AND a < 71)*(a-55)+(a > 96)*(a-87))
430 NEXT f : POKE d, c : LET d = d+on
440 PRINT a$( TO tw); "▲▲";
450 LET a$ = a$(3 TO )
460 IF d = UDG
    THEN PRINT
    "Warning :you are now in the user
    graphics area!"
    : GO TO w1
470 IF d = UDG-20
    THEN PRINT
    "Warning :you are now in routines
    memory area!"
    : GO TO w1
480 GO TO w1+on
600 REM INV Save***** IRU
610 INPUT "Save M.C. from address :"; a
620 INPUT "Number of bytes to be saved :"; n
630 INPUT "Name of the routine :"; a$
640 SAVE a$ CODE a, n
650 PRINT "Do you wish to verify?"
660 INPUT v$
670 IF v$ <> "y" THEN GO TO mr
680 PRINT "Rewind tape and press ""PLAY""."
690 VERIFY a$ CODE a, n
700 PRINT "O.K." : PAUSE 50
710 GO TO mr
900 REM INV Load***** IRU
910 INPUT
    "Load M.C. to address starting ▲▲▲ :▲"
    ; a
920 IF a > mm OR a < 1m THEN GO TO 910
930 INPUT "Program name :"; a$
940 PRINT "Press ""PLAY"" on tape."
950 LOAD a$ CODE a : GO TO mr
1200 REM INV List***** IRU
1210 LET a$ = "0123456789ABCDEF"
1220 INPUT "List Address :"; d
1230 PRINT "Press ""M"" to return to Menu."
1240 LET a = INT ( PEEK d/16)
    : LET b = PEEK d-16* INT ( PEEK d/16)
1250 PRINT d; TAB 7; a$(a+on); a$(b+on)
1260 LET d = d+on
1270 IF INKEY$ = "m" OR INKEY$ = "M" THEN GO TO mr
1280 GO TO 1240
1500 REM INV Move***** IRU

```

```

1510 INPUT "Move from memory to "; fm
1520 INPUT "Move until memory to "; um
1530 INPUT "Move to memory to "; tm
1540 IF tm > fm THEN GO TO 1610
1550 LET mp = tm
1560 FOR I = fm TO um
1570 POKE mp, PEEK I
1580 LET mp = mp+on
1590 NEXT I
1600 GO TO mr
1610 LET mp = um+tm-fm
1620 FOR I = um TO fm STEP -on
1630 POKE mp, PEEK I
1640 LET mp = mp-on
1650 NEXT I
1660 GO TO mr
2000 LET RT = PEEK 23732+qk* PEEK 23733
2010 IF RT = 65535 THEN LET mm = 65547
    : LET UDG = 65367
2020 IF RT = 32767 THEN LET mm = 32579
    : LET UDG = 32599
2030 LET n1 = INT (UDG/qk)
2040 POKE 23675, UDG-n1*qk : POKE 23676, n1
2050 RETURN

```

The Freeway Frog Program

Program Design

This program is about frogs hopping their way home by crossing from one side of a highway to the other.

There are trucks and cars and motor bicycles on the highway with police cars frequently patrolling the highway.

Scores are given by the number of moves hopped from one side to the other side.

You must understand the game very clearly because you are the programmer.

This is merely the problem definition stage.

Unless we can clearly define and understand the problem it will be very hard for us to know where we are heading in the later stage of the design and development of the whole project.

FREEWAY FROG program structure

Now we can apply what we have learnt about TOP DOWN MODULAR program design. We proceed from very high level and divide the whole program up into well-defined logical modules.

They are as follows:

1. INITIALISATION
perform all initial tasks.
2. TRAFFIC FLOW
control of traffic on the highway.
This can again be logically subdivided into
 - i. regular traffic flow eg. trucks, cars and motorcycles.
 - ii. irregular flow traffic eg. police car.
3. FROG
control the movement of the FROG, crash testing as well as home testing.
4. GENERAL PROGRAM CONTROL
this part of the program takes care of the score calculation and display, testing for termination of the game.

5. TERMINATION

perform the house keeping job before returning from the program.

Developing the FREEWAY FROG program

In developing the FREEWAY FROG program we have divided it into six stages. The division into these six stages follows very closely to the logical breaks shown above.

With each stage of development, we will have testing to ensure each stage is working before proceeding to the next stage.

The six stages will be:

1. Data Base design

involving the design of objects shape, the creation of database for each object and variables that the program will work on.

2. Initialisation

involves the setting up of the screen, and the initialisation of various variables.

3. Traffic flow

here we develop only the regular traffic flow and test it separately from the irregular police car appearance which involves different logic.

4. Police car

we develop and test the police car movement.

5. Frog

this will involve testing of frog movement, moving the frog by blanking the old frog and drawing the new frog, test for crashing, calculating scores ...etc.

6. Program control

handles updating of highscore, restart of game, abortion of game, return from the program.

Before we proceed to develop the stages of FREEWAY FROG, we will introduce here a BASIC program which will add up the contents of a block of memory and generate the sum as a "checksum".

You may find this checksum useful to check for data entry errors.

```
9000    REM
9010    REM checksum
```



```
9020 INPUT "From address: ";f
9030 INPUT "To address : ";t
9040 LET s=0
9050 FOR I=f TO t
9060 LET s=s+PEEK I
9070 NEXT I
9080 PRINT "Checksum: ";s
9090 GO TO 9020
```

Enter the start of the memory block, then the end of the memory block which you want to do the checksum in decimal value. The BASIC program will generate the checksum value.

Stage 1 - Data Base

**** Design of object shape ****

As this is a two way traffic game, we need to design two truck shapes: a left truck shape and a right truck shape etc...

For the FROG, there will be four possible directions and so there will be four shapes, one for each direction.

Let us adopt the following convention for position of an object and for drawing each object:

If the shape is composed of four characters

C	D
A	B

the position pointer will be pointing to character A.

Character A is drawn first, then character B ...until the whole row is finished.

Then we'll draw the next row up. That is, repositioning to one line above to character C.

Thus, we will organise the shape database as

Shape ABCD

Don't forget that each character shape is defined as eight bytes.

If we adopt the principle of drawing each character from top byte to the bottom byte, then we will need to organise the shape database also from top to bottom. Thus, the shape database will look like this:

Shape	a1, a2, a3, a4, a5, a6, a7, a8
	b1, b2, b3, b4, b5, b6, b7, b8
	c1, c2, c3, c4, c5, c6, c7, c8
	d1, d2, d3, d4, d5, d6, d7, d8

Let's adopt another principle that when we draw a shape, we will draw the whole shape into its screen memory location first, then we change the attribute file.

We will therefore store the attribute data that relates to that shape after its screen memory data.

Unlike the shape, for each character there is only one corresponding attribute data byte.

So, to cater for the attributes data we have four attribute data bytes after the above thirty two shape data bytes. (for a four character shape).

**** Input of object shape ****

label	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
FRGSHP	120	69AFH	6A36H	27055	27190	18085
LBKE	340	6A37H	6A76H	27191	27254	3647
LBATT	430	6A77H	6A7EH	27255	27262	28
RBIKE	460	6A7FH	6ABEH	27263	27326	3355
RBATT	560	6ABFH	6AC6H	27327	27334	28
LCAR	600	6AC7H	6B26H	27335	27430	5073
LCATT	730	6B27H	6B32H	27431	27442	36
RCAR	770	6B33H	6B92H	27443	27538	4902
RCATT	900	6B93H	6B9EH	27539	27550	12
LTRUCK	940	6B9FH	6C76H	27551	27766	22023
LTATT	1230	6C77H	6C91H	27767	27793	87
RTRUCK	1280	6C92H	6D69H	27794	28009	21834
RTATT	1570	6D6AH	6D84H	28010	28036	87
BLANK	1620	6D85H	6D88H	28037	28040	0

Module from 27055 to 28040, 986 bytes, checksum is 79197.

Suggested name "shapdb", (shape database).

All the above objects except the Frog can be grouped into SHAPE data bytes followed by attribute data bytes.

The reason why the Frog shape database is not of that format is because we have decided that the frog has only one colour at any one time, either GREEN when it is alive, or RED when it is dying, or YELLOW when it reaches home.

In this game, we use BLACK (0) as the paper colour except for the highway boundary and the top information line where we use WHITE (7) as paper colour.

For objects that move only on the highway, paper attribute will be 0 and the ink colour will be that given in its database.

Before we input the shape data base into memory and store it onto cassette, it is assumed that you understand character representation in memory.

We will now explain the assembler listing using the example of shape FROG1, starting at line 160.

In line 160, you will see

```
69B7 6F 160 FROG1 DB 111,15,31,159,220,216,120,48
      OF 1F 9F DC D8 78 30
```

69B7 is the memory address in hexadecimal format

6F is the start of the eight bytes of the current DB instruction in Hexadecimal value.
The hexadecimal value of the next seven bytes are in the next line between line 160 and line 170.
ie 0FH, 1FH, 9FH, DCH, D8H, 78H, 30H.

160 is the line number of the assembler listing.

FROG1 is the label. This is for our benefit only.

DB is a mnemonic. It means that what follows is a sequence of bytes. (Similar to DATA in BASIC).

111,15,31,159,220,216,120,48
are the bytes to be loaded into the memory.

Now let's build the FROG1 shape.

00	00000000	00000000	00
01	00000001	10000000	80
23	00100011	11000100	C4
25	00100101	10100100	A4
6F	01101111	11110110	F6
4F	01001111	11110010	F2
DF	11011111	11111011	FB
FF	11111111	11111111	FF
6F	01101111	11110110	F6
0F	00001111	11110000	F0
1F	00011111	11111000	F8
9F	10011111	11111001	F9
DC	11011100	00111011	3B
D8	11011000	00011011	1B
78	01111000	00011110	1E
30	00110000	00001100	0C

Remember:

- i. we draw the bottom row first from left to right.
- ii. Then we draw the next row up.
- iii. For each character, we draw the eight bytes from top to bottom.
- iv. Then at the very last, we fill in the attributes.

FRGSHP in line 120 defines one of four pointers pointing to the four shapes of the frog. In the program, we will therefore be able

to find the correct shape given the direction of the frog.

DEFW is a mnemonic that means we want to define a 2-byte "nn". The least significant byte is first while the most significant byte is next.

**** Input of shape database ****

Use the Hexload program to input lines 120 to 1590 in the assembler listing. Enter only the hex bytes as shown in column 2.

Remember to save and verify the code before you proceed to the next part of this stage!

**** Design of the objects database ****

We have decided that there will be a regular flow of six vehicles in the two lane of the highway.
These are randomly distributed between the two lanes.

Object database will store information about the current status of the traffic:

For example, for each object we need to know:

Existence, Movement cycle count, Direction of movement, whether it's partly on the screen or not, Position pointer, Shape database pointer, Attribute database pointer, Number of Rows the shape occupies, Number of column the shape occupies.

The database carries this information about each object in each game cycle.

The first six group of databases from program line 1710 to 2040 represent the six vehicles that are going to be on the highway. When any vehicle moves off the highway, another vehicle will be generated randomly.

One simple way is to prepare the initial information for each possible vehicle and store this in memory. When a new vehicle is generated, we just go to the corresponding memory locations and restore the database.

We will apply the same principle to the Police car and the Frog.

Therefore, when we build up the object database, we need not build up the temporary database, as this will be initialised by the program.

* temporary database memory map

Format: for the six existing vehicles, the frog and the police car:

Existence	DEFB	1 byte
Cycle count	DEFB	1 byte
Direction	DEFB	1 byte
Real/abstract	DEFB	1 byte
Position	DEFW	2 bytes
Shape pointer	DEFW	2 bytes
Attribute	DEFW	2 bytes
Row	DEFB	1 byte
Column	DEFB	1 byte
TOTAL		12 bytes

label	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)
OB1EXT	1710	6E25H	6E30H	28197	28208
OB2EXT	1800	6E31H	6E3CH	28109	28220
OB3EXT	1850	6E3DH	6E48H	28221	28232
OB4EXT	1900	6E49H	6E54H	28233	28244
OB5EXT	1950	6E55H	6E60H	28245	28256
OB6EXT	2000	6E61H	6E6CH	28257	28268
PCAREXT	2070	6E6DH	6E78H	28269	28280
FRGEXT	2180	6E79H	6E80H	28281	28288

As mentioned above, these are only temporary working storage. The information that they contain changes as the game proceeds.

There are two other major temporary working storage area. They are used to store what is underneath the frog and the police car respectively.

label	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)
FRGSTR	1650	6D89H	6DACH	28041	28076
PCSTR	1660	6DADH	6F24H	28077	28196

We do not need to define any of these locations - only allow for them. We only need to build up the following database.

The object database is organised in the following way:

FRGDB	frog database
DBINDEX	other object database index
RBDB	right bicycle database
LBDB	left bicycle database
RCDB	right car database
LCDB	left car database
RTDB	right truck database
LTDB	left truck database

LPCDB	left police car database
LPCATT	left police attribute database
RPCDB	right police car database
RPCATT	right police car database

label	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
FRGDB	2260	6E81H	6E88H	28289	28296	561
DBINDEX	2320	6E89H	6E94H	28297	28308	1734
RBDB	2400	6E95H	6EAOH	28309	28320	640
LBDB	2470	6EA1H	6EACH	28321	28332	692
RCDB	2540	6EADH	6EB8H	28333	28344	523
LCDB	2610	6EB9H	6EC4H	28345	28356	760
RTDB	2680	6EC5H	6ED0H	28357	28368	584
LTDB	2750	6ED1H	6EDCH	28369	28380	809
LPCDB	2820	6EDDH	6EE8H	28381	28392	955
LPCATT	2890	6EE9H	6EF4H	28393	28404	30
RPCDB	2930	6EF5H	6FO0H	28405	28416	379
RPCATT	3000	6FO1H	6FOCH	28417	28428	30

Module from 28289 to 28428, 140 bytes, checksum 7697.

Suggested name is "objdb". (object database).

We know that all objects except the FROG have a twelve bytes database.

The meaning and contents of each byte is:

* Existence (1 byte)

- set to zero when the object is nonexistant.
 - set to value n where (n - 1) is the number of cycles that the object will wait before it is allowed to move.
- | | | |
|-------------|-------------------------|---|
| n value for | left and right cycle is | 2 |
| | left and right car is | 3 |
| | left and right truck is | 6 |
| | police car is | 1 |
| | frog is | 8 |

in other words, the police car moves every cycle, the motorcycle move every alternate cycle etc.

* Cycle count (1 byte)

- initially set as 1 so that it is ready to move straight away and decrement by one every cycle.
- when it reaches zero, the object will be allowed to move and the count will be reinitialised to the value held in the existence byte.

* Direction (1 byte)

- all left to right traffic (ie. top lane traffic) will have direction value zero.

- all right to left traffic (ie. bottom lane traffic) will have direction value one.
- * Abstract/Real flag (1 byte)
 - this defines whether objects is partly off the screen
 - all left to right traffic will start off with value zero (abstract).
 - left to right traffic will change this to one when their position points to the real screen 4820H.
 - all right to left traffic will have flag start off with value one (real); the object has a position pointing to the screen. ie 48DFH.
 - as the right to left traffic moves off the screen, ie. when the position pointer moves from 48C0H to 48BFH, this will be changed from real to abstract.
- * Position pointer (2 bytes)
 - 2 bytes pointer storing the current position of the object.
- * Shape pointer (2 bytes)
 - 2 bytes pointer pointing to the shape database of the object.
- * Attribute pointer (2 bytes)
 - 2 bytes pointer pointing to the attribute database of the object.
- * Row (1 byte)
 - store how many rows the object shape occupies.
- * Column (1 byte)
 - store how many columns the object shape takes.
 - this value includes two columns of blanks, one at each end of the object.
 - The purpose of these two extra columns of blanks is to avoid the traffic getting too close to each other.

Now you can key in the object initialise database from listing 2270 to 3010.

You can use EZ-code or Hexload to enter this module.
If you use EZ-code, remember to save the source listing as well as the dumped listing.

**** General database ****

We have covered so far the database from 69AFH to 6FOCH
(27055 to 28428).

Now we are going to build up the rest of the database and we

classify this as "general database".

This is organised as below:

line	500 to 630	SOUND
	660 to 690	SCORE MESSAGE
	720 to 1210	GENERAL

label	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
PCTON1	500	6F0DH	6F10H	28429	28432	282
PCTON2	510	6F11H	6F14H	28433	28436	166
HOMTON	540	6F15H	6F3CH	28437	28476	2565
SCRMS1	660	6F3DH	6F42H	28477	28482	540
SCORE	670	6F43H	6F48H	28483	28488	288
SCRMS2	680	6F49H	6F53H	28489	28499	732
HISCR	690	6F54H	6F58H	28500	28504	240

Module from 28429 to 28504, 76 bytes, checksum 4813.

Suggested name "gendb". (general database).

You only need to input from line 500 to line 690.

From line 720 to line 1210, memory 6F59H to 6F82H
(28505 to 28546), these are all variables used by the program.

Line 1100 to 1150 are instructions with mnemonic EQU. This assigns a value to the corresponding label and is used by the assembler program. You do not have to enter anything.

Conclusion

Now we have covered the whole database area from memory 69AFH TO 6F82H (27055 to 28546).

Examine all modules that you have built, their names, their memory range before you proceed the next stage of the building up of the FREEWAY FROG program.

You should have now developed three modules:

name	from mem	to mem	length	checksum
shpdb	27055	28040	986	79197
objdb	28289	28428	140	7697
gendb	28429	28504	76	4818

Note that the database occupies nearly 1400 bytes!!

Stage 2 - Initialisation

**** Screen Setup ****

In this module, we set up the highway, the score display, the frog as well as initialise all control variables.

We will do it in three parts.

First, clear the screen and put in the highway.

Secondly, put in all the frogs.

Thirdly, display the score.

This module includes the following routines:

routine	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
INIT	1240	6F83H	700AH	28547	28682	11996
CLRSCR	7060	72D7H	7316H	29399	29462	5236
DRWHWY	1820	700BH	7040H	28683	28736	4802
HIGHWY	1980	7038H	7040H	28728	28736	696
FILHWY	2070	7041H	7054H	28737	28756	2609
LINEUP	2290	7055H	7079H	28757	28793	4325
DISASC	7630	7328H	7349H	29480	29513	3580
SCRIMG	14500	776FH	7786H	30575	30598	1855
FINAL	15390	77FEH	781DH	30718	30749	2466

Module spread from 28547 to 30749, 2201 bytes.

Suggested name "init". (initialisation).

Enter first CLRSCR, DRWHWY, FILHWY, FINAL into their corresponding memory locations.

Then enter INIT routine. Enter three bytes of zero for the following lines instead of the CALLs because the routine which are called haven't been developed yet.

line#	address(H)	address(D)
1430	6FAFH	28591
1470	6FBAH	28602
1490	6FC0H	28608
1530	6FCBH	28619
1570	6FD6H	28630
1590	6FDCH	28636
1630	6FE7H	28647

Then enter the following codes into memory starting from 32000. Save the module from 28547 to 30598, 2052 bytes before running the code in memory 32000.

```

F3          DI                      ;Disable interrupt
D9          EXX                     ;Preserve HL'
E5          PUSH    HL
D9          EXX
CD836F      CALL    INIT
3E7F  KEY   LD      A,7FH           ;TRAP SPACE KEY
DBFE        IN      A,(FEH)
E601        AND     1
20F8        JR      NZ,KEY         ;loop if not press
CDFE77      CALL    FINAL         ;finalisation
D9          EXX                     ;restore HL'
E1          POP     HL
D9          EXX
FB          EI                      ;enable interrupt
C9          RET

```

You should see the screen blacken and four white lines appear on the screen.

The following is a brief description of what each routine does.

INIT

```

set border colour to black
initialise frog-crash flag, frog existence, gameflag
    number of frog
set random ROM pointer
set frog station (also initial position of frog) to
    50ACH
call clear-screen
call draw highway
call line-up frogs (five of them)
load score message
print score
load high score message
print high score
initialise all objects as nonexistent
initialise chase flag, siren sound flag and score

```

DRWHWY

```

fill top highway line (32 characters of 40A0H)
fill middle highway line (32 characters of 4860H)
fill bottom highway line (32 characters of 5020H)
*remember that highway is white paper black ink
unfill top two-character bytes of top highway
    (therefore, they are white)
unfill bottom two-character bytes of bottom highway
    (they are also white now)
redraw middle two-bytes of the middle highway

```

FILHWY

- initialise fill character ()FFH)
- set loop count to 32 (one line 32 characters)
- draw one character (8 bytes)
- move pointer to next character each time

FINAL

- set white border
- blank screen
- set screen attribute file to white paper and black ink

If everything is fine, save the module first from memory location 28500 to 30800, 2300 bytes.

Now enter LINEUP, DRWFRG routines. Check the checksum and save the whole module again under the same name, same addresses. Then change memory from 6FAFH (28591) to 6FB1H (28593) to that it corresponds to line 1430 of the assembly listing. ie. CD 55 70.

Run 32000 and you will see five frogs line up at the left bottom of the screen.

The following are descriptions of what these two routines do:

LINEUP

- set frog direction to 1 (facing right)
- set frog shape to FROG2
- set attribute number to 2 (green)
- if no frog left
 - then return
- else
 - for number of frog
 - push BC, DE, HL onto stack
 - draw the frog by calling DRWFRG routine
 - pop HL, DE, BC from stack
 - update draw position

DRWFRG

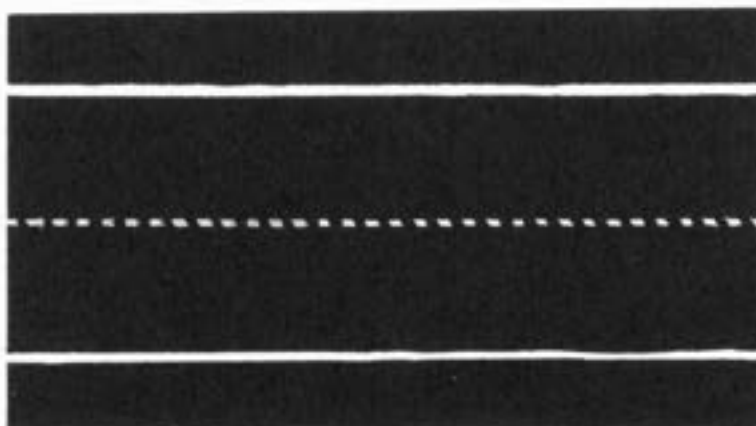
- draw shape using convention discussed earlier
- calculate attribute pointer
- fill attribute of frog

Now input DISASC, SCRIMG routines. Check the checksum and save the module again as above.

Now change the memories referred to by the following lines in the assembly listing to the correct codes shown on the listing.

line# 1470, 1490, 1530, 1570, 1590, 1630.

Run 32000 and you should see the whole screen set up with highway drawn, frog and score displayed.



Stage 3-Regular Traffic

In this stage, we develop the regular flow of traffic.
ie. all traffic except police car:

```
Traffic control ( including regeneration of traffic)
  regenerate traffic
Moving traffic
  moving control
    drawing traffic
      determine drawn shape
```

Below is a table of all routines in this module.

name	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
TFCTRL	3090	70BDH	70D8H	28861	28888	2587
REGEN	3320	70D9H	710EH	28889	28942	5673
MOVTRF	3700	710FH	71AEH	28943	29102	14831
MVCTRL	4720	71AFH	7208H	29103	29192	9222
DRAW	5560	7209H	7295H	29193	29333	13923
RSHAPE	6630	7296H	72D6H	29334	29398	6803
RANDNO	15050	77CCH	77DDH	30668	30685	2194

Module from 28861 to 30685, 1824 bytes.

Suggested name "regtrf". (regular traffic).

Again, it is useless to generate a total checksum of the whole module because the memory range covers some undeveloped memory area. But it is important that you check the checksum of each routine after entering it.

We develop this module in two parts.

Firstly, the draw routine for traffic.

Secondly, the traffic control and draw control.

Input DRAW, RSHAPE routines into their memory region, checksum and save them.

Then entering the following testing program starting from memory 32000.

```

F3          DI
D9          EXX
E5          PUSH    HL
D9          EXX
CD836F      CALL    INIT
3E03        LD      A, 3          ;row count
32606F      LD      (ROW), A      ;store in ROW
3E09        LD      A, 9          ;column count
325F6F      LD      (COLUMN), A   ;store in COLUMN
11926C      LD      DE, RTRUCK    ;right truck shape
216A6D      LD      HL, RTATT     ;right truck attri
226A6F      LD      (ATTPTR), HL ;store in ATTPTR
3E01        LD      A, 1          ;set to real pos
212248      LD      HL, 4822H     ;top lane
CD0972      CALL    DRAW          ;draw shape
3E7F        KEY      LD      A, 7FH ;key trap
DBFE        IN      A, (OFEH)
E601        AND     1
20F8        JR      NZ, KEY
CDFE77      CALL    FINAL
D9          EXX
E1          POP     HL
D9          EXX
FB          EI
C9          RET

```

Load the database modules in the order they are created.

Load the init module.

Load the routines you developed in this stage.

Save memory 27000, 4000 bytes into "frog" module. This will includes all routines you have developed so far.

Enter and save the above test routine in memory 32000.

Run 32000 and you should see the screen set up and a right truck on the top lane as well.

You can change the parameters in the program above between CALL INIT and CALL DRAW to test all other object shapes.

Below is a brief description of the two routines.

DRAW

Similar logic to DRWFRG

RSHAPE

trap lower 5 bits of low order byte of position
parameter
subtract from 1FH and add 1

trap lower 5 bits again
determine SKIP and FILL depending on real or abstract
calculate attribute position and store in ATTPOS

Enter TFCTRL, REGEN and MVCTRL routines in their memory region and save the whole module.

Edit the testing routine as follows:

```

                                DI
                                EXX
                                PUSH    HL
                                EXX
                                CALL     INIT
CDBD70  MOVE                   CALL     TFCTRL
CDOF71                                CALL     MOVTRF
3E7F                                LD      A, 7FH
DBFE                                IN      A,(OFEH)
E601                                AND     1
20F2                                JR      NZ, MOVE
                                CALL     FINAL
                                EXX
                                POP     HL
                                EXX
                                EI
                                RET

```

By now you should realise that we save the whole stage module while we are developing that stage.

Once a module is fully developed and tested, it will be merged together with previous modules and saved into the "frog" module.

We test the modules by a small testing program starting from memory 32000.

After you have done all the housekeeping work for your modules, test run the new "frog" module.

If everything is correct, you should see the whole screen as before plus all traffic moving at a very fast speed in the two lanes. This is because there is no delay between each program cycle.

A short description of the routines.

TFCTRL

```

    load generation flag
    if not regeneration
        decrement flag count
        return
    else
        regenerate the first nonexistence object by calling

```


the REGEN routine
return

REGEN

save existence database pointer
generate random number 0 to 5
test the first two character of the screen position
where the object is created
if the sum of the attributes of those two position is
not equal to zero
then return (traffic jam)
else
determine the initialise database
load into temporary working database
set regeneration cycle count to 2
return

MOVTRF

for all existing objects
decrement cycle count
if count reaches zero
reload count from existence
move one character left or right
store new position in NEWPOS
test attribute correspondence of the front of
objects
if any nonzero ink
if not green
set jam flag
else
set crash flag
if jam flag set
load cycle count with 2(move one cycle
later)
return
else
store new position
call MVCTRL (move control)

MVCTRL

if edge reached
change real/abstract flag
if left moving
if on edge (position low order byte = 1FH)
if abstract flag
set non exist, return
else
goto L1
else

```

        goto L1
else
    get end of object
    if reach end of screen (low order byte is 0COH)
        set non exist, return
L1: refill cycle count
    retrieve shape pointer
    store attribute pointer in ATTPTR
    retrieve ROW and COLUMN of shape
    DRAW from new position.

```

RANDNO

```

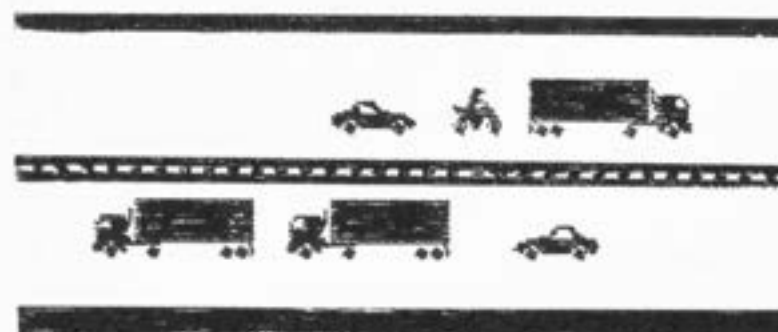
push HL,BC onto stack
retrieve what random pointer pointing to in ROM
update pointer (move down ROM)

```

Score 0 HIGH SCORE 0



Score 0 HIGH SCORE 0



Stage 4 - Police Car

In this stage, we will introduce the POLICE car into the program.

The POLICE car will be generated randomly and enter with SIREN sounding. It moves every cycle and there is no traffic jam in its course. It will overtake any regular traffic before it.

That is why the program needs to save what is underneath the police car and put it back when the police car moves on.

Below are all routines in this module.

name	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
RESPC	9560	7450H	74C1H	29776	29889	11011
POLICE	7930	734AH	73DEH	29514	29662	15769
STRPC	8830	73DFH	744FH	29663	29775	10615

There are routines which are called in this module which has been developed in previous modules.

Module from 29514 to 29889, 376 bytes.

Suggested name "police".

Enter POLICE and STRPC routines. Checksum and save them in the "police" module.

Then edit the testing program to the following:

```

                                DI
                                EXX
                                PUSH    HL
                                EXX
                                CALL     INIT
                                MOVE     CALL     TFCTRL
                                CALL     MOVTRF
                                CD4A73  MOVE1  CALL     POLICE
                                LD        A,7FH
                                IN        A,(OFEH)
                                AND       1
                                20F5      JR        NZ,MOVE1
                                CALL     FINAL
                                EXX
                                POP      HL
                                EXX
                                EI
                                RET
```

Load the "frog" module, then the "police" module.

Run the testing program. You should see the POLICE car moving very fast on the highway.

If you want to put in other traffic as well, change the relative jump to JR NZ, MOVE.

Remember to recalculate the displacement offset. (EFH).

As it moves, you would see the POLICE car wipe off the traffic shape as it overtakes them. It may be so fast that you wouldn't notice.

But you can tell when some traffic starts to run into the vehicle in front of them.

Let's look at these routines:

POLICE

```
    if police car non-exist
        get a random number
        if not a mutiple of 31
            return
        else
            set chase flag
            determine top or bottom lane randomly
            load corresponding initial database.
    get direction
    store position pointer
    retrieve position
    move and store NEWPOS
    set ROW, COLUMN, REAL/ABSTRACT flag, POS before
        call RSHAPE
    get resulted ATTPOS and test head of shape for green
    if green attribute
        set crash flag
        blank front of police car
    call STRPC (for storing of what's underneath policecar)
    update position database
    call MVCTRL (for moving on and off the screen)
    turn off chase flag if non-exist
```

STRPC

```
    set HL points to NEWPOS
    set DE points to PCSTR (police car store)
    store position and 5 byte of information starting from
        ROW variable
    store according to SKIP/FILL format
        all screen memory first
        then attribute file
```

Enter the RESPC routine and merge with the previous two routines.
Save the whole module as "police".

You need to edit the testing program again to test the storing and restoring.

Although we included the STRPC routine we are not sure that it saved the correct data underneath the police car. Only the RESPC can help us to know that, because it puts what was stored back onto the screen.

change the tesing program to the following:

```

      .
      .
      .
CD5074  MOVE    CALL    TFCTRL
      .        CALL    RESPC  (-----
      .        CALL    MOVTRF
      .        CALL    POLICE
      .        LD      A,7FH
      .        IN      A,(OFEH)
      .        AND     1
20EC    JR      NZ,MOVE
      .
      .
      .

```

Adjust the relative jump before you test run the module with "frog".

You should see the POLICE car overtaking vehicles without wiping them off.

The RESPC's logic is as below:

```

RESPC
  return if police car nonexist
  restore the position and 5 bytes into variables
    starting from ROW
  restore screen memory then attribute according to
    SKIP/FILL format
  return

```

Finally, enter SIREN routine, checksum and merge it with the rest of the "police" module.

Load "frog" module then reload the new "police" module.

Edit the testing program in memory 32000's as following:

```

      CALL      INIT
      MOVE      CALL      TFCTRL
      CALL      RESPC
      CALL      MOVTRF
      CALL      POLICE
CD8777 CALL      SIREN      (-----)
      LD        A,7FH
      IN        A,(OFEH)
      AND       1
      JR        NZ,MOVE

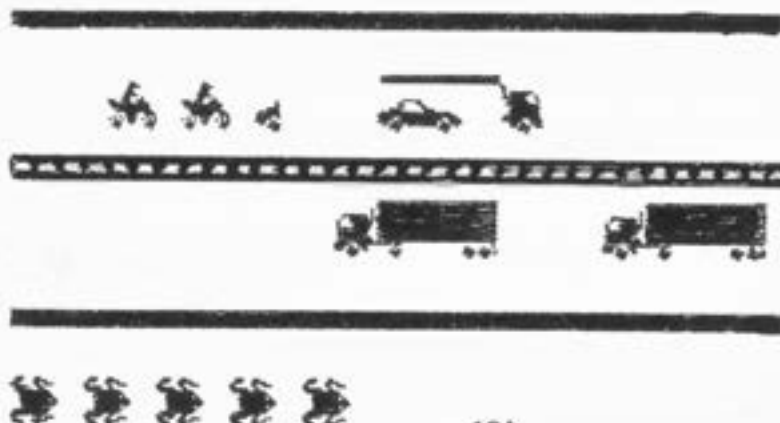
```

Run the testing program and you will find the whole traffic flow will slow down. This is because of a constant delay either because of the sound output or a downcount delay loop.

```
SIREN
    trap (ENTER) key pressed
    if pressed
        change siren to no siren or vice versa
    if no sound
        go to DELAY
    else
        if no police car
            go to delay
        else
            determine the correct tone database
            load onto DE, HL
            call 03B5H
            return
DELAY:  down count 6144
```

```
Merge this module with "frog" in the memory and reload in "frog".
```

Score	0	HIGH SCORE	0
-------	---	------------	---



Stage 5-The Frog

In this stage we develop the frog routines.

We need to regenerate the frog when a frog dies.

We also need to handle the frog movement, save what is underneath it and restore what was stored back when the frog moves.

We also need to handle the frog crashing or home run and calculate score.

We build up this module in three parts as below.

- Regenerate and move frog
- store and restore what is underneath
- handle crashing, homerun and score

All routines within this module is as follows:

name	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
FROG	10280	74C2H	74E2H	29890	29922	3818
REGFRG	10520	74E3H	750FH	29923	29967	4079
MOVFRG	10770	7510H	75D5H	29968	30165	19943
RESFRG	11870	75D6H	7627H	30166	30247	8492
STRFRG	12440	7628H	7690H	30248	30352	10136
CRASH	13160	7691H	76A6H	30353	30374	2767
FRGDIE	13280	76A7H	7707H	30375	30471	9965
FRGTON	13890	7708H	771CH	30472	30492	2435
CALSCR	14040	771DH	776EH	30493	30574	8106

Module from 29890 to 30574, 685 bytes.

Suggested name "frgrtn" (frog routine).

Enter FROG, REGFRG, MOVFRG, RESFRG, STRFRG and CRASH routines.

Edit the testing program as following:

```
      .
      .
      .
MOVE  CALL    INIT
      CALL    TFCTRL
      CALL    RESPC
      CALL    MOVTRF
      CALL    POLICE
      CALL    FROG    (-----
      CALL    SIREN
```

```

LD      A,7FH
IN      A,(OFEH)
AND     1
JR      NZ,MOVE
.
.

```

Since we haven't entered the FRGDIE routine yet, replace the coding in line 13190 of the assembly listing by
00, 00, 00

Run the testing program and you should be able to move the frog. The controls are "l"=up, "a"=down, "i"=left, "p"=right.

When the frog crashed, it will simply disappear because the FRGDIE routine which handles the dying procedure of the frog hasn't been put in yet.

The description of these few routines are as following:

FROG

the control routine for the whole FROG module.

```

if frog crashed
    goto CRH
else
    set score-flag to no score (0)
    call REGFRG
    decrement cycle count
    if count non zero
        return
    else
        reset cycle count
        call MOVFRG
        if not crash
            return

```

```

CRH:call CRASH routine
return

```

REGFRG

```

if frog does not exist
    load frog initial database to working database
    update frog station to three position left
    initialise OLDFRG and NEWFRG to FRGPOS
    initialise frog storage area to 0
return

```

MOVFRG

```

initialise registers
    C - absolute movement
    B - frog direction

```



```

        DE- frog shape
test frog movement
        l - up, a - down, i - left, p - right
store shape, direction
if absolute move is zero
    return
else
    restore old frog position
    calculate new frog position and store
test up screen position, right screen, bottom screen,
    frog station
if valid
    store position into NEWFRG
    set score flag.
restore OLDFRG
if OLDFRG equal NEWFRG
    return
else
    call RESFRG
    set OLDFRG equal NEWFRG
    move stored direction, shape pointer to frog
        database
    call STRFRG
    return

```

RESFRG

```

restore underneath frog based on OLDFRG position
memory first then attributes

```

STRFRG

```

store underneath frog based on NEWFRG position
draw frog while drawing as well

```

CRASH

```

reset crash flag
set frog nonexistent
call FRGDIE routine (dying procedures)
call RESFRG routine (place back what was underneath)
decrement number of frog

```

After you have saved up all the modules, enter the CALSCR, FRGDIE and FRGTON routine.

To test the crash handling routine, replace 13190 of the listing by the following instruction:

```

7698      CDA776      CALL      FRGDIE      (30360)

```

Edit the testing program to the following:

```
      .  
      .  
CALL   FROG  
CALL   CALSCR (-----  
CALL   SIREN  
      .  
      .  
      .
```

Merge the routine in the "frgrtn" module and run memory 32000 together with the "frog" module.

When the frog crashes, it will flash red and vanish.

FRGDIE

```
test frog reaches home or die  
set die tone, red colour attribute  
if reaches home  
    add one to third digit of score  
    (bonus 100 points)  
    call DISSCR (display score)  
    set home tone, yellow colour attribute  
draw frog based on OLDFRG, FROGSH, and attribute just  
    set by call DRWFRG  
flash frog with the attribute five times
```

FRGTON

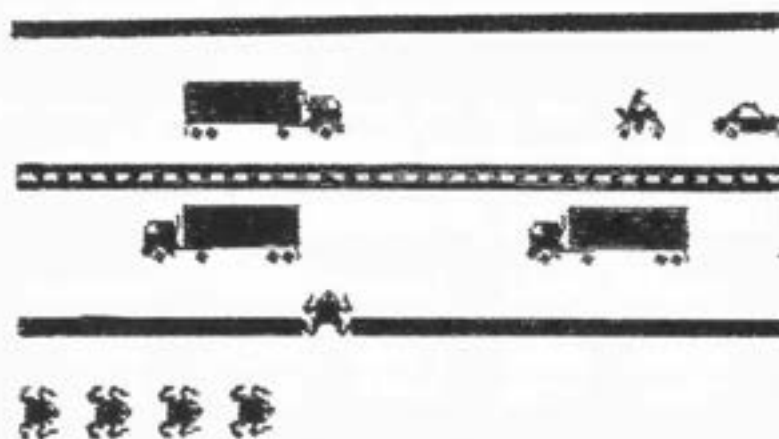
```
call TONE1 (tone code from SIREN routine)  
move up or down the tone database depends upon attribute  
    used to flash the frog ( if yellow then down db )  
                           ( if red    then up   db )
```

CALSCR

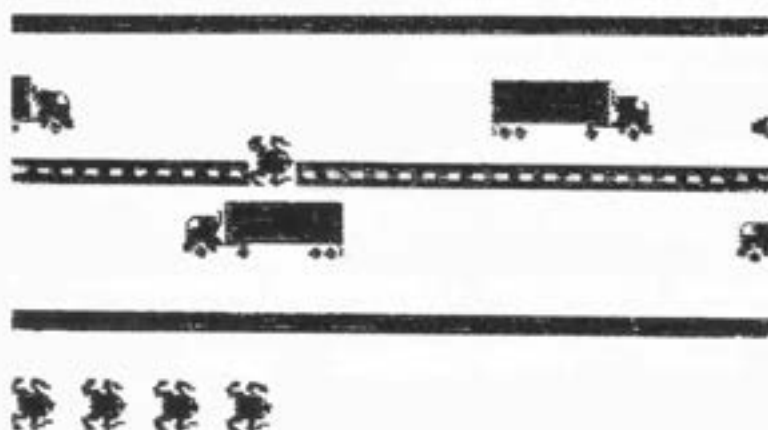
```
if frog non-exist  
    return  
else  
    if score flag not set  
        return  
    else  
        if go up  
            add one to tenth digit of score  
            (10 points)  
        else  
            if not within the highway  
                return  
            else  
                add one to tenth digit
```

readjust all score digits
build up score printing image
display score printing image

Score 0 HIGH SCORE 0



Score 100 HIGH SCORE 0



Stage 6-Control

In this stage we develop the control routine for the whole program.

The main control is that when the game is finished, high score is updated and the game is restarted automatically.

In any cycle, the user can abort the game by pressing the space key.

You will find that line 180 to 440 of the listing looks very similar to the testing program we have been developing.

Routines left for program are as follows:

name	line#	from(H)	to(H)	from(D)	to(D)	checksum
START	180	6978H	69AEH	27000	27054	8427
OVER	15200	77DEH	77FDH	30686	30717	2491

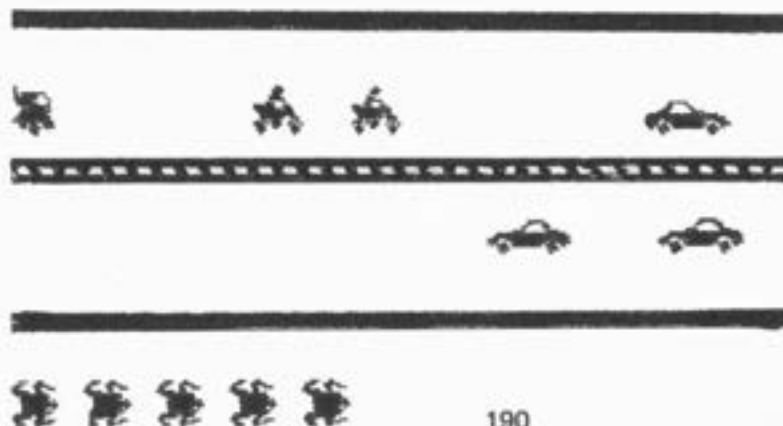
Now enter these routines into the memory. Save them together with the "frog" module and save the whole module as "frog".

Run 27000 instead of 32000 and you will have the whole program working.

```
OVER
  compare all digits of HISCR and SCORE+1
  for the first nonequal digit
    if HISCR digit is lower
      update HISCR to SCORE+1
    else
      return
  return
```

Congratulations and I hope you enjoyed the development of the FREEWAY FROG program.

Score 1140 HIGH SCORE 1140



```

00100 :***** FREEMAY FROG *****
00110 :
00120 :
00130 :
00140 :
00150 :
6978 00160 ORG 27000
00170 :
6978 F3 00180 START DI ;DISABLE BASIC SYSTEM AFFECTING
6979 D9 00190 EXX ;THE KEYBOARD SCANNING
697A E5 00200 PUSH HL ;PRESERVE THE HL' REGISTER PAIR
697B D9 00210 EXX ;POP BACK BEFORE RETURN
697C CD936F 00220 AGAIN CALL INIT ;INITIALISATION
697F CD8D70 00230 MOVE CALL TFCTRL ;TRAFFIC CONTROL ROUTINE
6982 CD5074 00240 CALL RESPC ;RESTORE UNDERNEATH
6985 CD0F71 00250 CALL MOVTRF ;MOVE TRAFFIC
6988 CD4A73 00260 CALL POLICE ;POLICE CAR ROUTINE
698B CDC274 00270 CALL FROG ;FROG MODULE
698E CD1D77 00280 CALL CALSCR ;CALCULATE AND DISPLAY SCORE
6991 CD9777 00290 CALL SIREN ;SIREN OR DELAY
6994 3A776F 00300 LD A,(GAMFLG) ;FINISH WHEN NO FROG
6997 A7 00310 AND A
6998 2005 00320 JR NZ,CONTIN
699A CDDE77 00330 CALL OVER ;HIGHSCORE MANAGEMENT
699D 18DD 00340 JR AGAIN ;NEW GAME AGAIN
699F 3E7F 00350 CONTIN LD A,7FH ;TRAP SPACE KEY PRESSED
69A1 DBFE 00360 IN A,(0FEH) ;SCAN KEYBOARD
69A3 E601 00370 AND 1
69A5 20D9 00380 JR NZ,MOVE
69A7 CDFE77 00390 CALL FINAL ;RESET SCREEN AND BORDER COLOUR
69AA D9 00400 EXX
69AB E1 00410 POP HL ;RETRIEVE HL'
69AC D9 00420 EXX
69AD FB 00430 EI ;ENABLE INTERRUPTS
69AE C9 00440 RET ;RETURN TO BASIC SYSTEM
00450 :
00460 :
69AF 00470
00100 :***** FROGDB/ASM *****
00110 :
69AF B769 00120 FRSSHP DEFW FROG1 ;UP FROG
69B1 D769 00130 DEFW FROG2 ;RIGHT FROG
69B3 F769 00140 DEFW FROG3 ;DOWN FROG
69B5 176A 00150 DEFW FROG4 ;LEFT FROG
69B7 6F 00160 FROG1 DB 111,15,31,159,220,216,120,48
0F 1F 9F DC DB 7B 30
69BF F6 00170 DB 246,240,248,249,59,27,30,12
F0 FB F9 3B 1B 1E 0C
69C7 00 00180 DB 0,1,35,37,111,79,223,255
01 23 25 6F 4F DF FF
69CF 00 00190 DB 0,128,196,164,246,242,251,255
80 C4 A4 F6 F2 FB FF
69D7 1F 00200 FROG2 DB 31,31,31,127,252,193,113,56
1F 1F 7F FC C1 71 3B
69DF FE 00210 DB 254,244,248,240,192,156,240,192
F4 FB F0 C0 9C F0 C0
69E7 3B 00220 DB 56,113,193,252,127,31,31,31

```

69EF	71 C1 FC 7F 1F 1F 1F C0 00230	DB	192,240,156,192,240,248,244,254
69F7	F0 9C C0 F0 FB F4 FE FF 00240 FROG3	DB	255,223,79,111,37,35,1,0
69FF	DF 4F 6F 25 23 01 00 FF 00250	DB	255,251,242,246,164,196,128,0
6A07	FB F2 F6 A4 C4 80 00 30 00260	DB	48,120,216,220,159,31,15,111
6A0F	78 DB DC 9F 1F 0F 6F 0C 00270	DB	12,30,27,59,249,248,240,246
6A17	1E 1B 3B F9 FB F0 F6 7F 00280 FROG4	DB	127,47,31,15,3,57,15,3
6A1F	2F 1F 0F 03 39 0F 03 F0 00290	DB	240,240,248,254,63,131,142,28
6A27	F0 FB FE 3F B3 BE 1C 03 00300	DB	3,15,57,3,15,31,47,127
6A2F	0F 39 03 0F 1F 2F 7F 1C 00310	DB	28,142,131,63,254,248,240,240
	BE B3 3F FE FB F0 F0 00320 ;		
6A37	00 00330 ; 00 00 00 00340 LBIKE	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6A3F	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 1F 00350	DB	31,63,115,81,169,112,112,32
6A47	3F 73 51 A9 70 70 20 FE 00360	DB	254,252,252,234,213,206,14,4
6A4F	FC FC EA D5 CE 0E 04 00 00370	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6A57	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00380	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6A5F	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 01 00390	DB	1,3,1,0,3,4,14,31
6A67	03 01 00 03 04 0E 1F B0 00400	DB	128,192,192,224,224,112,119,255
6A6F	C0 C0 E0 E0 70 77 FF 00 00410	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00420 ;		
6A77	00 00430 LBATT 07 07 00	DB	0,7,7,0
6A7B	00 00440 07 07 00	DB	0,7,7,0
	00450 ;		
6A7F	00 00460 RBIKE 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6A87	7F 00470 3F 3F 57 AB 73 70 20	DB	127,63,63,87,171,115,112,32
6A8F	FB 00480 FC CE BA 95 0E 0E 04	DB	248,252,206,138,149,14,14,4
6A97	00 00490 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6A9F	00 00500 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6AA7	01 00510 03 03 07 07 0E EE FF	DB	1,3,3,7,7,14,238,255
6AAF	B0 00520	DB	128,192,128,0,192,32,112,248

	C0 B0 00 C0 20 70 FB		
6AB7	00 00530	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
	00540 ;		
	00550 ;		
6ABF	00 00560 RBATT	DB	0,7,7,0
	07 07 00		
6AC3	00 00570	DB	0,7,7,0
	07 07 00		
	00580 ;		
	00590 ;		
6AC7	00 00600 LCAR	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
6ACF	00 00610	DB	0,0,3,7,15,2,0,0
	00 03 07 0F 02 00 00		
6AD7	07 00620	DB	7,255,255,159,111,247,240,96
	FF FF 9F 6F F7 F0 60		
6ADF	80 00630	DB	128,255,255,255,255,254,0,0
	FF FF FF FF FE 00 00		
6AE7	F0 00640	DB	240,254,255,159,111,246,240,96
	FE FF 9F 6F F6 F0 60		
6AEF	00 00650	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
6AF7	00 00660	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
6AFF	00 00670	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
6B07	00 00680	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
6B0F	00 00690	DB	0,0,0,0,0,63,97,193
	00 00 00 00 3F 61 C1		
6B17	00 00700	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,128,192
	00 00 00 00 00 80 C0		
6B1F	00 00710	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
	00720 ;		
6B27	00 00730 LCATT	DB	0,6,6,6,6,0
	06 06 06 06 00		
6B2D	00 00740	DB	0,0,0,6,6,0
	00 00 06 06 00		
	00750 ;		
	00760 ;		
6B33	00 00770 RCAR	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
6B3B	0F 00780	DB	15,127,255,249,246,111,15,6
	7F FF F9 F6 6F 0F 06		
6B43	01 00790	DB	1,255,255,255,255,127,0,0
	FF FF FF FF 7F 00 00		
6B4B	E0 00800	DB	224,255,255,249,246,239,15,6
	FF FF F9 F6 EF 0F 06		
6B53	00 00810	DB	0,0,192,224,240,64,0,0
	00 C0 E0 F0 40 00 00		
6B5B	00 00820	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		
6B63	00 00830	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00		

6B6B	00	00840	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,1,3
	00 00 00 00 00 01 03			
6B73	00	00850	DB	0,0,0,0,0,252,134,131
	00 00 00 00 FC B6 83			
6B7B	00	00860	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
6B83	00	00870	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
6B8B	00	00880	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
		00890 ;		
6B93	00	00900 RCATT	DB	0,2,2,2,2,0
	02 02 02 02 00			
6B99	00	00910	DB	0,2,2,0,0,0
	02 02 00 00 00			
		00920 ;		
		00930 ;		
6B9F	00	00940 LTRUCK	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
6BA7	1F	00950	DB	31,31,31,62,61,59,3,1
	1F 1F 3E 3D 3B 03 01			
6BAF	FB	00960	DB	248,252,254,127,184,216,192,128
	FC FE 7F B8 DB C0 80			
6BB7	FF	00970	DB	255,255,255,255,6,15,15,6
	FF FF FF 06 0F 0F 06			
6BBF	FF	00980	DB	255,255,255,0,0,0,0,0
	FF FF 00 00 00 00 00			
6BC7	FF	00990	DB	255,255,255,0,0,0,0,0
	FF FF 00 00 00 00 00			
6BCF	FF	01000	DB	255,255,255,0,6,15,15,6
	FF FF 00 06 0F 0F 06			
6BD7	FE	01010	DB	254,254,254,4,50,122,122,48
	FE FE 04 32 7A 7A 30			
6BDF	00	01020	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
6BE7	00	01030	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
6BEF	00	01040	DB	0,0,7,9,17,17,31,31
	00 07 09 11 11 1F 1F			
6BF7	02	01050	DB	2,2,250,250,254,252,252,248
	02 FA FA FE FC FC FB			
6BFF	FF	01060	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255
	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF			
6C07	FF	01070	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255
	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF			
6C0F	FF	01080	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255
	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF			
6C17	FF	01090	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255
	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF			
6C1F	FE	01100	DB	254,254,254,254,254,254,254
	FE FE FE FE FE FE FE			
6C27	00	01110	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
6C2F	00	01120	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00			
6C37	00	01130	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0

6C3F	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	01140	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6C47	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	01150	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255
6C4F	00 00 00 00 FF FF FF	01160	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255
6C57	00 00 00 00 FF FF FF	01170	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255
6C5F	00 00 00 00 FF FF FF	01180	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255
6C67	00 00 00 00 FF FF FF	01190	DB	0,0,0,0,0,254,254,254
6C6F	00 00 00 00 FE FE FE	01200	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	01210 ;		
		01220 ;		
6C77	00 03 03 05 05 05 05 05	01230 LTATT	DB	0,3,3,5,5,5,5,5
6C80	00 03 03 05 05 05 05 05	01240	DB	0,3,3,5,5,5,5,5
6C89	00 00 05 05 05 05 05 05	01250	DB	0,0,0,5,5,5,5,5
		01260 ;		
		01270 ;		
6C92	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	01280 RTRUCK	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6C9A	7F 7F 20 4C 5E 5E 0C	01290	DB	127,127,127,32,76,94,94,12
6CA2	FF FF 00 60 F0 F0 60	01300	DB	255,255,255,0,96,240,240,96
6CAA	FF FF 00 00 00 00 00 00	01310	DB	255,255,255,0,0,0,0,0
6CB2	FF FF 00 00 00 00 00 00	01320	DB	255,255,255,0,0,0,0,0
6CBA	FF FF FF 60 F0 F0 60	01330	DB	255,255,255,255,96,240,240,96
6CC2	1F 3F 7F FE 1D 1B 03 01	01340	DB	31,63,127,254,29,27,3,1
6CCA	F8 FB FB 7C BC DC C0 80	01350	DB	248,248,248,124,188,220,192,128
6CD2	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	01360	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6CDA	00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00	01370	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0
6CE2	7F 7F 7F 7F 7F 7F 7F 7F	01380	DB	127,127,127,127,127,127,127,127
6CEA	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF	01390	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255,255
6CF2	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF	01400	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255,255
6CFA	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF	01410	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255,255
6D02	FF FF FF FF FF FF FF FF	01420	DB	255,255,255,255,255,255,255,255
6D0A	40	01430	DB	64,64,95,95,127,63,63,31

40 5F 5F 7F 3F 3F 1F					
6D12 00	01440	DB	0,0,224,144,136,136,248,248		
00 E0 90 88 88 FB FB					
6D1A 00	01450	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0		
00 00 00 00 00 00 00					
6D22 00	01460	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0		
00 00 00 00 00 00 00					
6D2A 00	01470	DB	0,0,0,0,0,127,127,127		
00 00 00 00 7F 7F 7F					
6D32 00	01480	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255		
00 00 00 00 FF FF FF					
6D3A 00	01490	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255		
00 00 00 00 FF FF FF					
6D42 00	01500	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255		
00 00 00 00 FF FF FF					
6D4A 00	01510	DB	0,0,0,0,0,255,255,255		
00 00 00 00 FF FF FF					
6D52 00	01520	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0		
00 00 00 00 00 00 00					
6D5A 00	01530	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0		
00 00 00 00 00 00 00					
6D62 00	01540	DB	0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0		
00 00 00 00 00 00 00					
	01550 ;				
	01560 ;				
6D6A 00	01570 RTATT	DB	0,5,5,5,5,5,3,3,0		
05 05 05 05 05 03 03 00					
6D73 00	01580	DB	0,5,5,5,5,5,3,3,0		
05 05 05 05 05 03 03 00					
6D7C 00	01590	DB	0,5,5,5,5,5,0,0,0		
05 05 05 05 05 00 00 00					
	01600 ;				
	01610 ;				
6D85 00	01620 BLANK	DB	0,0,0,0		
00 00 00					
	01630 ;				
	01640 ;				
0024	01650 FRGSTR	DS	36		;4*8+4
007B	01660 FCSTR	DS	120		;12*8+12+7
	01670 ;				
	01680 ;				
	01690 ;***** DATA BASE *****				
	01700 ;				
6E25 00	01710 OB1EXT	DEFB	0		;OBJECT 1 EXISTENCE
6E26 00	01720	DEFB	0		;CYCLE COUNT
6E27 00	01730	DEFB	0		;DIRECTION, 0=>RIGHT
6E28 00	01740	DEFB	0		;OBJECT 1 POS REAL/ABS
6E29 0000	01750	DEFW	0		;POSITION COUNTER
6E2B 0000	01760	DEFW	0		;SHAPE POINTER
6E2D 0000	01770	DEFW	0		;ATTRIBUTE POINTER
6E2F 00	01780	DEFB	0		;ROW COUNTER
6E30 00	01790	DEFB	0		;COLUMN POINTER
6E31 00	01800 OB2EXT	DB	0,0,0,0		
00 00 00					
6E35 0000	01810	DEFW	0		;OB2 POS REAL/ABS FLAG
6E37 0000	01820	DEFW	0		

6E39	0000	01830	DEFW	0	
6E3B	00	01840	DB	0,0	
	00				
6E3D	00	01850	DB3EXT	DB	0,0,0,0
	00 00 00				
6E41	0000	01860	DEFW	0	
6E43	0000	01870	DEFW	0	
6E45	0000	01880	DEFW	0	
6E47	00	01890	DB	0,0	
	00				
6E49	00	01900	DB4EXT	DB	0,0,0,0
	00 00 00				
6E4D	0000	01910	DEFW	0	
6E4F	0000	01920	DEFW	0	
6E51	0000	01930	DEFW	0	
6E53	00	01940	DB	0,0	
	00				
6E55	00	01950	DB5EXT	DB	0,0,0,0
	00 00 00				
6E59	0000	01960	DEFW	0	
6E5B	0000	01970	DEFW	0	
6E5D	0000	01980	DEFW	0	
6E5F	00	01990	DB	0,0	
	00				
6E61	00	02000	DB6EXT	DB	0,0,0,0
	00 00 00				
6E65	0000	02010	DEFW	0	
6E67	0000	02020	DEFW	0	
6E69	0000	02030	DEFW	0	
6E6B	00	02040	DB	0,0	
	00				
		02050	;		
		02060	;		
6E6D	00	02070	PCAREXT	DEFB	0
6E6E	00	02080	PCARCYC	DEFB	0
6E6F	00	02090	PCARDIR	DEFB	0
6E70	00	02100	PCARRAP	DEFB	0
6E71	0000	02110	PCARPOS	DEFW	0
6E73	0000	02120	PCARSHP	DEFW	0
6E75	0000	02130	PCARATT	DEFW	0
6E77	02	02140	PCARROW	DEFB	2
6E78	06	02150	PCARCOL	DEFB	6
		02160	;		
		02170	;		
6E79	00	02180	FRGEXT	DEFB	0
6E7A	00	02190	FRGCYC	DEFB	0
6E7B	00	02200	FRGDIR	DEFB	0
6E7C	0000	02210	FRGPOS	DEFW	0
6E7E	0000	02220	FROGSH	DEFW	0
6E80	00	02230	FRGATR	DEFB	0
		02240	;		
		02250	;		
6E81	08	02260	FRGDB	DB	8,8,1
	08 01				
6E84	AC50	02270	FRGSTN	DEFW	50ACH
6E86	B769	02280	DEFW	FR0G1	

;POLICE CAR DATABASE

;FROG DATABASE

;0:UP 1:RHT 2:DWN 3:LFT

;INITIAL POSITION OF FROG

6E8B 04	02290	DB	4	;ATTR. TOTAL 8 CHARS
	02300 ;			
	02310 ;			
6E89 956E	02320 DBINDEX	DEFW	RBDB	;RIGHT BYTE DB
6E8B A16E	02330	DEFW	LBDB	;LEFT BIKE DB
6E8D A06E	02340	DEFW	RCDB	;RIGHT CAR DB
6E8F B96E	02350	DEFW	LCDB	;LEFT CAR DB
6E91 C56E	02360	DEFW	RTDB	;RIGHT TRUCK DB
6E93 D16E	02370	DEFW	LTDB	;LEFT TRUCK DB
	02380 ;			
	02390 ;			
6E95 02	02400 RBDB	DB	2,1,0,0	;EXT CNT DIR RAF
01 00 00				
6E99 1D4B	02410	DEFW	4B1DH	;POS
6E9B 7F6A	02420	DEFW	RBIKE	;RIGHT BIKE
6E9D BF6A	02430	DEFW	RBATT	;ATTRIBUTE
6E9F 02	02440	DB	2,4	;ROW COL
04				
	02450 ;			
	02460 ;			
6EA1 02	02470 LBDB	DB	2,1,1,1	
01 01 01				
6EA5 DF4B	02480	DEFW	4BDFH	
6EA7 376A	02490	DEFW	LBIKE	
6EA9 776A	02500	DEFW	LBATT	
6EAB 02	02510	DB	2,4	
04				
	02520 ;			
	02530 ;			
6EAD 03	02540 RCDB	DB	3,1,0,0	
01 00 00				
6EB1 1B4B	02550	DEFW	4B1BH	
6EB3 336B	02560	DEFW	RCAR	
6EB5 936B	02570	DEFW	RCATT	
6EB7 02	02580	DB	2,6	
06				
	02590 ;			
	02600 ;			
6EB9 03	02610 LCDB	DB	3,1,1,1	
01 01 01				
6EBD DF4B	02620	DEFW	4BDFH	
6EBF C76A	02630	DEFW	LCAR	
6EC1 276B	02640	DEFW	LCATT	
6EC3 02	02650	DB	2,6	
06				
	02660 ;			
	02670 ;			
6EC5 06	02680 RTDB	DB	6,1,0,0	
01 00 00				
6EC9 1B4B	02690	DEFW	4B1BH	
6ECB 926C	02700	DEFW	RTRUCK	
6ECD 6A6D	02710	DEFW	RTATT	
6ECF 03	02720	DB	3,9	
09				
	02730 ;			
	02740 ;			

6ED1	06	02750	LTDB	DB	6,1,1,1	
	01 01 01					
6ED5	DF4B	02760		DEFW	4BDFH	
6ED7	9F6B	02770		DEFW	LTRUCK	
6ED9	776C	02780		DEFW	LTATT	
6EDB	03	02790		DB	3,9	
	09					
		02800				
		02810				
6EDD	01	02820	LPCDB	DB	1,1,1,1	
	01 01 01					
6EE1	DF4B	02830		DEFW	4BDFH	
6EE3	C76A	02840		DEFW	LCAR	
6EE5	E96E	02850		DEFW	LPCATT	
6EE7	02	02860		DB	2,6	
	06					
		02870				
		02880				
6EE9	00	02890	LPCATT	DB	0,5,5,5,5,0	
	05 05 05	05 00				
6EEF	00	02900		DB	0,0,0,5,5,0	
	00 00 05	05 00				
		02910				
		02920				
6EF5	01	02930	RPCDB	DB	1,1,0,0	
	01 00 00					
6EF9	1B4B	02940		DEFW	4B1BH	
6EFB	336B	02950		DEFW	RCAR	
6EFD	016F	02960		DEFW	RPCATT	
6EFF	02	02970		DB	2,6	
	06					
		02980				
		02990				
6F01	00	03000	RPCATT	DB	0,5,5,5,5,0	
	05 05 05	05 00				
6F07	00	03010		DB	0,5,5,0,0,0	
	05 05 00	00 00				
		03020				
		03030				
		00480				
		00490				
6F0B	29	00500	PCTON1	DB	41,0,0F0H,1	;FIRST POLICE CAR TONE
	00 F0 01					
6F11	17	00510	PCTON2	DB	25,0,8CH,3	;SECOND POLICE CAR TONE
	00 BC 03					
		00520				
		00530				
6F15	46	00540	HOMTON	DB	46H,0,0C7H,4	;FROG REACH HOME TONE
	00 C7 04					
6F19	5D	00550		DB	5DH,0,8CH,3	
	00 BC 03					
6F1D	7C	00560		DB	7CH,0,0A1H,2	
	00 A1 02					
6F21	AA	00570		DB	0AAH,0,0F1H,1	
	00 F1 01					
6F25	DE	00580		DB	0DEH,0,6DH,1	

	00 6D 01				
6F29	28	00590	DB	28H,1,9,1	
	01 09 01				
6F2D	8B	00600	DB	88H,1,0BFH,0	
	01 BF 00				
6F31	0F	00610	DB	0FH,2,88H,0	
	02 8B 00				
6F35	C0	00620	DB	0C0H,2,5EH,0	
	02 5E 00				
6F39	84	00630 DIETON	DB	84H,3,43H,0	;FROG DYING TONE,REVERSE
	03 43 00				
		00640 ;			
		00650 ;			
6F3D	53	00660 SCRMS1	DM	'Score '	
	63 6F 72	65 20			
6F43	30	00670 SCORE	DB	30H,30H,30H,30H,30H,30H	
	30 30 30	30 30			
6F49	48	00680 SCRMS2	DM	'HIGH SCORE '	
	49 47 48	20 53 43 4F 52			
	45 20				
6F54	30	00690 HISCR	DB	30H,30H,30H,30H,30H	
	30 30 30	30			
		00700 ;			
		00710 ;			
0005		00720 IMAGE	DS	5	;PRINTING IMAGE OF SCORE
6F5E	00	00730 UPDOWN	DEFB	0	;SET WHEN FROG MOVES UP OR DOWN
		00740 ;			
		00750 ;			
6F5F	00	00760 COLUMN	DB	0	;VARIABLE STORING SHAPE COLUMN
6F60	00	00770 ROW	DB	0	;VARIABLE STORING SHAPE ROW
6F61	00	00780 SKIP	DEFB	0	;CHAR SKIPPING DURING DRAW
6F62	00	00790 FILL	DEFB	0	;CHAR DRAWN
6F63	0000	00800 ATTPOS	DEFW	0	;HOLDING THE ATTRIBUTE FILE PTR
6F65	00	00810 ATTR	DB	0	;ATTR OF CHARACTER BLOCK DRAWN
6F66	0000	00820 DRWPOS	DEFW	0	;DRAW POSITION
6F68	0000	00830 STRPOS	DEFW	0	;STORE POSITION
		00840 ;			
		00850 ;			
6F6A	0000	00860 ATTPTR	DEFW	0	
6F6C	0000	00870 NEWPOS	DEFW	0	;NEW TRAFFIC OBJECT POSITION
6F6E	0000	00880 POSPTR	DEFW	0	;TRAFFIC POSITION DATABASE PTR
6F70	00	00890 GENFLG	DEFB	0	;TRAFFIC REGENERATION FLAG
		00900 ;			
		00910 ;			
6F71	00	00920 JAMFLG	DEFB	0	;SET TO 1 AS TRAFFIC MOVE JAM
		00930 ;			
		00940 ;			
6F72	00	00950 CHASE	DEFB	0	;SET WHEN POLICE CAR APPEARS
6F73	00	00960 SOUND	DEFB	0	;SET WHEN USER WANT SIREN SOUND
6F74	00	00970 TONFLG	DEFB	0	;DETERMINE WHICH SIREN TONE
6F75	0000	00980 RND	DEFW	0	;POINTER TO ROM FOR RANDOM NO
		00990 ;			
		01000 ;			
6F77	01	01010 GAMFLG	DEFB	1	;END IF ZERO
6F78	0000	01020 OLDFRG	DEFW	0	;OLD FROG POS
6F7A	0000	01030 NEWFRG	DEFW	0	;NEW FROG POS

6F7C 00	01040 CRHFLG	DEFB	0	;SET TO 1 WHEN FROG WAS CRASH
6F7D 00	01050 TEMDIR	DEFB	0	;FROG TEMPORARY NEW DIRECTION
6F7E 0000	01060 TEMPOS	DEFW	0	;FROG TEMPORARY NEW POSITION
6F80 0000	01070 TEMSHP	DEFW	0	;FROG TEMPORARY NEW SHAPE
	01080 ;			
	01090 ;			
5020	01100 BOTHY1	EQU	5020H	;0,38, 0,39
5120	01110 BOTHY2	EQU	5120H	
46A0	01120 TOPHY1	EQU	46A0H	;0,128, 0,129
47A0	01130 TOPHY2	EQU	47A0H	
4B60	01140 MIDHY1	EQU	4B60H	;x,83, x,84
4C60	01150 MIDHY2	EQU	4C60H	
	01160 ;			
	01170 ;			
3C00	01180 CHRSET	EQU	3C00H	;FIRST 256 BYTES NOTHING
	01190 ;			
	01200 ;			
6FB2 05	01210 NUMFRG	DEFB	5	;NUMBER OF FROG
	01220 ;			
	01230 ;			
6FB3 AF	01240 INIT	XOR	A	;000 FOR D2 D1 D0
6FB4 D3FE	01250	OUT	(0FEH),A	;SET BORDER COLOUR
6FB6 32485C	01260	LD	(23624),A	;TO BLACK
6FB9 327C6F	01270	LD	(CRHFLG),A	
6FBC 32796E	01280	LD	(FRGEXT),A	;SET FROG NON EXIST
6FBF 3C	01290	INC	A	
6F90 32776F	01300	LD	(GAMFLG),A	;SET GAME FLAG
6F93 3E05	01310	LD	A,5	;INITIALISE FROG NO
6F95 32826F	01320	LD	(NUMFRG),A	
6F98 ED5F	01330	LD	A,R	;GENERATE RANDOM PTR
6F9A E63F	01340	AND	3FH	;FOR THIS CYCLE
6F9C 67	01350	LD	H,A	;PTR POINTS TO ROM
6F9D ED5F	01360	LD	A,R	
6F9F 6F	01370	LD	L,A	
6FA0 22756F	01380	LD	(RND),HL	
6FA3 21AC50	01390	LD	HL,50ACH	;INIT FROG STATION
6FA6 22846E	01400	LD	(FRGSTN),HL	
6FA9 CD0772	01410	CALL	CLRSCR	;CLEAR SCREEN ROUTINE
6FAC CD0B70	01420	CALL	DRWHWY	;DRAW HIGHWAY
6FAF CD5570	01430	CALL	LINEUP	;LINE UP ALL EXIST FROGS
6FB2 210040	01440	LD	HL,4000H	;MESSAGE LOCATION
6FB5 113D6F	01450	LD	DE,SCRMS1	;LOAD SCORE MESSAGE
6FB8 0606	01460	LD	B,6	
6FBA CD2B73	01470	CALL	DISASC	;DISPLAY ASCII CHARACTER
6FBD 21446F	01480	LD	HL,SCORE+1	;PRINT SCORE
6FC0 CD6F77	01490	CALL	SCRIMG	;CONVERT TO PRINTABLE IMAGE
RG				
6FC3 210640	01500	LD	HL,4006H	
6FC6 11596F	01510	LD	DE,IMAGE	
6FC9 0605	01520	LD	B,5	
6FCB CD2B73	01530	CALL	DISASC	
6FCE 210E40	01540	LD	HL,400EH	;HIGH SCORE MESSAGE
6FD1 11496F	01550	LD	DE,SCRMS2	
6FD4 060B	01560	LD	B,11	
6FD6 CD2B73	01570	CALL	DISASC	
6FD9 21546F	01580	LD	HL,HISCR	
6FDC CD6F77	01590	CALL	SCRIMG	

6FDF 211940	01600	LD	HL, 4019H	
6FE2 11596F	01610	LD	DE, IMAGE	
6FE5 0605	01620	LD	B, 5	
6FE7 CD2873	01630	CALL	DISASC	
6FEA 21256E	01640	LD	HL, OBJEXT	;SET ALL OBJ NONEXIST
6FED 110C00	01650	LD	DE, 12	
6FF0 0607	01660	LD	B, 7	
6FF2 AF	01670	XOR	A	
6FF3 77	01680	INTLP1 LD	(HL), A	
6FF4 19	01690	ADD	HL, DE	
6FF5 10FC	01700	DJNZ	INTLP1	
6FF7 32726F	01710	LD	(CHASE), A	;SET NO POLICE CAR CHASE
6FFA 3C	01720	INC	A	
6FFB 32736F	01730	LD	(SOUND), A	;SET SIREN ON
6FFE 21436F	01740	LD	HL, SCORE	;INITIALISE SCORE TO
7001 11446F	01750	LD	DE, SCORE+1	;ASCII ZERO ie 30H
7004 0E05	01760	LD	C, 5	
7006 3630	01770	LD	(HL), 30H	
700B EDB0	01780	LDIR		;INIT SCORE TO 30H
700A C9	01790	RET		
	01800 ;			
	01810 ;			
700B 21A040	01820	DRWHWY LD	HL, 40A0H	;FILL TOP HWY
700E CD4170	01830	CALL	FILHWY	
7011 216048	01840	LD	HL, 4860H	;FILL MIDDLE HWY
7014 CD4170	01850	CALL	FILHWY	
7017 212050	01860	LD	HL, 5020H	;FILL BOTTOM HWY
701A CD4170	01870	CALL	FILHWY	
701D 21A046	01880	LD	HL, TOPHY1	;REVERSE BUILT HIGHWAY
7020 11A047	01890	LD	DE, TOPHY2	
7023 AF	01900	XOR	A	
7024 CD3870	01910	CALL	HIGHWY	
7027 212050	01920	LD	HL, BOTHY1	
702A 112051	01930	LD	DE, BOTHY2	
702D CD3870	01940	CALL	HIGHWY	
7030 21604B	01950	LD	HL, MIDHY1	
7033 11604C	01960	LD	DE, MIDHY2	
7036 3EC3	01970	LD	A, 195	;BIN 11000011
703B 0620	01980	HIGHWY LD	B, 32	;32#B BITS
703A 77	01990	HWYLOP LD	(HL), A	
703B 12	02000	LD	(DE), A	
703C 23	02010	INC	HL	
703D 13	02020	INC	DE	
703E 10FA	02030	DJNZ	HWYLOP	
7040 C9	02040	RET		
	02050 ;			
	02060 ;			
7041 3EFF	02070	FILHWY LD	A, OFFH	
7043 D9	02080	EXX		
7044 0620	02090	LD	B, 32	
7046 D9	02100	FILHYL EXX		
7047 E5	02110	PUSH	HL	
704B 060B	02120	LD	B, 8	
704A 77	02130	FILCHR LD	(HL), A	
704B 24	02140	INC	H	
704C 10FC	02150	DJNZ	FILCHR	


```

704E E1      02160      POP      HL
704F 23      02170      INC      HL
7050 D9      02180      EXX
7051 10F3    02190      DJNZ     FILHYL
7053 D9      02200      EXX
7054 C9      02210      RET
              02220 ;
              02230 ;
              02240 ;***** LINEUP *****
              02250 ;
              02260 ;          draw all frogs left on the screen
              02270 ;
              02280 ;
7055 3E01    02290 LINEUP LD      A,1          ;RIGHT FROG
7057 327B6E  02300      LD      (FRGDIR),A
705A 11D769  02310      LD      DE,FRG2       ;RIGHT FROG SHAPE
705D 2A846E  02320      LD      HL,(FRGSTN)    ;FROG STATION
7060 3E04    02330      LD      A,4           ;(PAPER 0)*8+(INK 4)
7062 32656F  02340      LD      (ATTR),A
7065 3A826F  02350      LD      A,(NUMFRG)     ;NUMBER OF FROG
7068 A7      02360      AND      A           ;TEST FOR NO FROG LEFT
7069 C8      02370      RET      Z
706A 47      02380      LD      B,A          ;NUMBER OF FROG TIMES
706B C5      02390 DRAWLN PUSH    BC
706C D5      02400      PUSH    DE
706D E5      02410      PUSH    HL
706E CD7A70  02420      CALL    DRWFRG        ;DRAW FROG ROUTINE
7071 E1      02430      POP      HL
7072 D1      02440      POP      DE
7073 2B      02450      DEC      HL
7074 2B      02460      DEC      HL
7075 2B      02470      DEC      HL
7076 C1      02480      POP      BC
7077 10F2    02490      DJNZ     DRAWLN
7079 C9      02500      RET
              02510 ;
              02520 ;
              02530 ;***** DRWFRG *****
              02540 ;
              02550 ;          similar to DRAW routine
              02560 ;
707A 3E02    02570 DRWFRG LD      A,2          ;TWO ROW FROG SHAPE
707C 0B      02580      EX      AF,AF'
707D E5      02590      PUSH    HL           ;STORE POS PTR
707E E5      02600 FRGLP0 PUSH    HL
707F 0E02    02610      LD      C,2          ;COLUMN COUNT
7081 E5      02620 FRGLP1 PUSH    HL
7082 060B    02630      LD      B,B         ;DRAW CHARACTER
7084 1A      02640 FRGLP2 LD      A,(DE)
7085 77      02650      LD      (HL),A
7086 13      02660      INC      DE
7087 24      02670      INC      H           ;NEXT BYTE OF THE CHAR
7088 10FA    02680      DJNZ     FRGLP2
708A E1      02690      POP      HL           ;CURRENT POINTER
708B 23      02700      INC      HL           ;MOVE TO NEXT CHAR POS
708C 0D      02710      DEC      C           ;DECR COLUMN COUNT

```

```

70BD 20F2      02720      JR      NZ,FRGLP1
70BF E1        02730      PDP     HL
7090 08        02740      EX      AF,AF'
7091 3D        02750      DEC     A
7092 0E20      02760      LD      C,32
7094 280E      02770      JR      Z,FRGATT
7096 08        02780      EX      AF,AF'
7097 A7        02790      AND     A
7098 ED42      02800      SBC     HL,BC
709A CB44      02810      BIT     0,H
709C 28E0      02820      JR      Z,FRGLP0
709E 7C        02830      LD      A,H
709F D607      02840      SUB     7
70A1 67        02850      LD      H,A
70A2 18DA      02860      JR      FRGLP0
70A4 E1        02870 FRGATT PDP     HL
70A5 7C        02880      LD      A,H
70A6 E618      02890      AND     18H
70A8 CB2F      02900      SRA     A
70AA CB2F      02910      SRA     A
70AC CB2F      02920      SRA     A
70AE C658      02930      ADD     A,5BH
70B0 67        02940      LD      H,A
70B1 3A656F    02950      LD      A,(ATTR)
70B4 77        02960      LD      (HL),A
70B5 23        02970      INC     HL
70B6 77        02980      LD      (HL),A
70B7 ED42      02990      SBC     HL,BC
70B9 77        03000      LD      (HL),A
70BA 2B        03010      DEC     HL
70BB 77        03020      LD      (HL),A
70BC C9        03030      RET
03040 ;
03050 ;***** TFCTRL *****
03060 ;
03070 ; Traffic control routine
03080 ;
70BD 21706F    03090 TFCTRL LD      HL,GENFLG
70C0 AF        03100      XOR     A
70C1 BE        03110      CP      (HL)
70C2 2802      03120      JR      Z,GENER
70C4 35        03130      DEC     (HL)
70C5 C9        03140      RET
70C6 21256E    03150 GENER LD      HL,DB1EXT
70C9 110C00    03160      LD      DE,12
70CC 0606      03170      LD      B,6
70CE BE        03180 TCTRLP CP      (HL)
70CF 2004      03190      JR      NZ,NSPACE
70D1 CDD970    03200      CALL   REGEN
70D4 C9        03210      RET
70D5 19        03220 NSPACE ADD     HL,DE
70D6 10F6      03230      DJNZ   TCTRLP
70D8 C9        03240      RET
03250 ;
03260 ;
03270 ;***** REGEN *****

```

```

03280 :
03290 :      regeneration of TRAFFIC
03300 :      INPUT:  HL=>DB PAIRS
03310 :
70D9 E5      03320 REGEN  PUSH  HL
70DA CDCC77  03330 RAND1  CALL  RANDNO      ;RANDOM NUMBER ROUTINE
70DB E607    03340      AND   7      ;GENERATE RANDOM NUMBER
70DF FE06    03350      CP    6      ;FROM 0 TO 5
70E1 30F7    03360      JR    NC,RAND1
70E3 012159  03370      LD    BC,5921H      ;TWO CHAR TEST
70E6 212059  03380      LD    HL,5920H      ;TEST JAM
70E9 CB47    03390      BIT   0,A      ;ODD NUMBER IS LEFT
70EB 2804    03400      JR    Z,RTRAF      ;RIGHT TRAFFIC
70ED 2EDF    03410      LD    L,0DFH
70EF 0EDE    03420      LD    C,0DEH
70F1 87      03430 RTRAF  ADD    A,A      ;GET DBINDEX PTR IN DE
70F2 5F      03440      LD    E,A
70F3 0A      03450      LD    A,(BC)      ;TEST 2 CHAR AHEAD
70F4 86      03460      ADD    A,(HL)
70F5 A7      03470      AND    A      ;ZERO PAPER, ZERO INK
70F6 2802    03480      JR    Z,LOADDB      ;IF 0, INITIALISE NEW OBJ
70F8 E1      03490      POP    HL      ;IF JAM, RETURN
70F9 C9      03500      RET
70FA 57      03510 LOADDB  LD    D,A      ;A=0
70FB 21896E  03520      LD    HL,DBINDEX      ;GET DB
70FE 19      03530      ADD    HL,DE
70FF 5E      03540      LD    E,(HL)      ;GET CORR DATABASE
7100 23      03550      INC    HL
7101 56      03560      LD    D,(HL)
7102 EB      03570      EX     DE,HL      ;SOURCE
7103 D1      03580      POP    DE      ;DESTINATION
7104 010C00  03590      LD    BC,12
7107 EDB0    03600      LDIR
7109 3E02    03610      LD    A,2      ;SET REGENERATION FLAG
710B 32706F  03620      LD    (GENFLG),A      ;SKIP FOR 2 CYCLES
710E C9      03630      RET
03640 :
03650 :
03660 :***** MOVTRF *****
03670 :
03680 :      MOVE TRAFFIC ROUTINE
03690 :
710F D9      03700 MOVTRF  EXX
7110 21256E  03710      LD    HL,OBIEXT
7113 110C00  03720      LD    DE,12
7116 0606    03730      LD    B,6
7118 E5      03740 MTRFLP  PUSH  HL
7119 D9      03750      EXX
711A E1      03760      POP    HL      ;EXISTENCE
711B 7E      03770      LD    A,(HL)      ;SKIP WHEN NO EXIST
711C A7      03780      AND    A
711D CAA771  03790      JP     Z,NXTMOV
7120 23      03800      INC    HL      ;CYCLE COUNT
7121 35      03810      DEC    (HL)      ;DECR CYCLE COUNT
7122 C2A771  03820      JP     NZ,NXTMOV
7125 23      03830      INC    HL      ;DIRECTION

```

7126	7E	03840		LD	A, (HL)	:0 L TO R, 1 R TO L
7127	23	03850		INC	HL	
7128	23	03860		INC	HL	
7129	226E6F	03870		LD	(POSPTR), HL	:POS PTR
712C	5E	03880		LD	E, (HL)	:RESTORE POS
712D	23	03890		INC	HL	
712E	56	03900		LD	D, (HL)	
712F	1C	03910		INC	E	:MOVE RIGHT
7130	A7	03920		AND	A	
7131	2802	03930		JR	Z, LDPOS	
7133	1D	03940		DEC	E	:MOVE LEFT
7134	1D	03950		DEC	E	:MOVE LEFT
7135	ED536C6F	03960	LDPOS	LD	(NEWPOS), DE	
7139	08	03970		EX	AF, AF'	
713A	010500	03980		LD	BC, S	:RESTORE OBJ LENGHT
713D	09	03990		ADD	HL, BC	
713E	7E	04000		LD	A, (HL)	:ROW
713F	32606F	04010		LD	(ROW), A	
7142	23	04020		INC	HL	
7143	7E	04030		LD	A, (HL)	:COLUMN
7144	325F6F	04040		LD	(COLUMN), A	
7147	3D	04050		DEC	A	
7148	4F	04060		LD	C, A	
7149	08	04070		EX	AF, AF'	
714A	A7	04080		AND	A	:TEST DIRECTION
714B	EB	04090		EX	DE, HL	
714C	200B	04100		JR	NZ, RTOL	:RIGHT TO LEFT
714E	09	04110		ADD	HL, BC	:FIND HEAD OF TRUCK
714F	7D	04120		LD	A, L	:LOB
7150	FE40	04130		CP	40H	:TEST RIGHT EDGE
7152	3046	04140		JR	NC, MOVEOK	:SKIP TEST AHEAD IF OFF
7154	1805	04150		JR	TESTAH	:TEST AHEAD
7156	7D	04160	RTOL	LD	A, L	:NEW POS, AHEAD AS WELL
7157	FEC0	04170		CP	0C0H	:TEST LEFT EDGE
7159	383F	04180		JR	C, MOVEOK	:SKIP TEST AHEAD
715B	7C	04190	TESTAH	LD	A, H	:COVERT TO ATTR
715C	E618	04200		AND	18H	
715E	CB2F	04210		SRA	A	
7160	CB2F	04220		SRA	A	
7162	CB2F	04230		SRA	A	
7164	C658	04240		ADD	A, 58H	
7166	67	04250		LD	H, A	
7167	012000	04260		LD	BC, 32	
716A	AF	04270		XOR	A	
716B	32716F	04280		LD	(JAMFLG), A	:INITIALISE JAM FLAG
716E	3A606F	04290		LD	A, (ROW)	
7171	08	04300	TAHLOP	EX	AF, AF'	
7172	7E	04310		LD	A, (HL)	:RETRIEVE ATTR
7173	E607	04320		AND	7	
7175	280E	04330		JR	Z, TFROG1	:JUMP IF BLACK INK
7177	FE04	04340		CP	4	:TEST FOR GREEN, FROG
7179	2007	04350		JR	NZ, JAM1	:JAM IF NOT A FROG
717B	3E01	04360		LD	A, 1	:MOVE IF IT IS FROG
717D	327C6F	04370		LD	(CRHFLG), A	:SET FROG CRASH
7180	1803	04380		JR	TFROG1	
7182	32716F	04390	JAM1	LD	(JAMFLG), A	:SET JAMFLG NON ZERO

```

71B5 A7      04400   TFRG1   AND      A
71B6 ED42    04410       SBC      HL,BC
71B8 08      04420       EX       AF,AF'
71B9 3D      04430       DEC      A                ;UPDATE ROW
71BA 20E5    04440       JR       NZ,TAHLOP
71BC 3A716F  04450       LD       A,(JAMFLG)        ;TEST TRAFFIC JAM
71BF A7      04460       AND      A
7190 280B    04470       JR       Z,MOVEDK          ;MOVE IF NO JAM
7192 D9      04480       EXX      ;ELSE STOP MOVE ONE CYCLE
7193 23      04490       INC      HL
7194 34      04500       INC      (HL)              ;LOAD 2 TO CYCLE COUNT
7195 34      04510       INC      (HL)
7196 2B      04520       DEC      HL
7197 D9      04530       EXX
7198 180D    04540       JR       NXTMOV
719A 2A6E6F  04550   MOVEDK   LD       HL,(POSPTR)    ;RETRIEVE PTR TO POS
719D ED5B6C6F 04560       LD       DE,(NEWPOS)
71A1 73      04570       LD       (HL),E            ;STORE NEWPOS IN DB
71A2 23      04580       INC      HL
71A3 72      04590       LD       (HL),D
71A4 CDAF71  04600       CALL     MVCTRL             ;MOVEMENT CONTROL
71A7 D9      04610   NXTMOV   EXX
71AB 19      04620       ADD      HL,DE
71A9 05      04630       DEC      B
71AA C21871  04640       JP       NZ,MTRFLP
71AD D9      04650       EXX
71AE C9      04660       RET
              04670       ;
              04680       ;***** MVCTRL *****
              04690       ;
              04700       ;      Traffic movement control routine
              04710       ;
71AF 2B      04720   MVCTRL   DEC      HL
71B0 2B      04730       DEC      HL                ;DE=>NEWPOS, HL=>DB PTR
71B1 7B      04740       LD       A,E                ;LOB POS
71B2 E61F    04750       AND      1FH              ;TEST EDGE
71B4 2005    04760       JR       NZ,CHGRAF          ;CHANGE REAL ABS FLAG
71B6 7E      04770       LD       A,(HL)
71B7 3C      04780       INC      A
71B8 E601    04790       AND      1
71BA 77      04800       LD       (HL),A
71BB 2B      04810   CHGRAF   DEC      HL                ;PT DIR
71BC 7E      04820       LD       A,(HL)
71BD A7      04830       AND      A
71BE 200F    04840       JR       NZ,TOLEFT          ;RIGHT TO LEFT
71C0 7B      04850       LD       A,E
71C1 E61F    04860       AND      1FH              ;IF TO RIGHT AND ABS
71C3 201B    04870       JR       NZ,DRWOBJ
71C5 23      04880       INC      HL                ;GET RAF
71C6 7E      04890       LD       A,(HL)
71C7 2B      04900       DEC      HL                ;PT TO DIR
71C8 A7      04910       AND      A                ;IF ABSTRACT, DIES
71C9 2015    04920       JR       NZ,DRWOBJ
71CB D9      04930       EXX
71CC 77      04940       LD       (HL),A            ;SET NON EXISTENCE
71CD D9      04950       EXX

```

```

710E C9      04960      RET
710F 3A5F6F  04970 TLEFT LD      A, (COLUMN)
7102 4F      04980      LD      C, A
7103 EB      04990      EX      DE, HL      ;TEST END OF OBJECT
7104 09      05000      ADD     HL, BC      ;TOUCHES LEFT EDGE
7105 7D      05010      LD      A, L
7106 FEC0    05020      CP      0C0H
7108 EB      05030      EX      DE, HL
7109 2005    05040      JR      NZ, DRWOBJ
710B D9      05050      EXX     ;OBJECT NONEXIST AS
710C 3600    05060      LD      (HL), 0      ;IT MOVES OFF SCREEN
710E D9      05070      EXX
710F C9      05080      RET
71E0 D9      05090 DRWOBJ EXX
71E1 7E      05100      LD      A, (HL)
71E2 23      05110      INC     HL
71E3 77      05120      LD      (HL), A      ;REFILL CYCLE COUNT
71E4 2B      05130      DEC     HL
71E5 D9      05140      EXX
71E6 23      05150      INC     HL
71E7 E5      05160      PUSH    HL      ;PT TO RAF
71E8 23      05170      INC     HL
71E9 23      05180      INC     HL
71EA 23      05190      INC     HL
71EB 5E      05200      LD      E, (HL)      ;RETRIEVE SHAPE PTR
71EC 23      05210      INC     HL
71ED 56      05220      LD      D, (HL)
71EE 23      05230      INC     HL
71EF 4E      05240      LD      C, (HL)      ;RETRIEVE ATTR PTR
71F0 23      05250      INC     HL
71F1 46      05260      LD      B, (HL)
71F2 ED436A6F 05270      LD      (ATTPTR), BC
71F6 23      05280      INC     HL
71F7 7E      05290      LD      A, (HL)
71FB 32606F  05300      LD      (ROW), A
71FB 23      05310      INC     HL
71FC 7E      05320      LD      A, (HL)
71FD 325F6F  05330      LD      (COLUMN), A
7200 E1      05340      POP     HL
7201 7E      05350      LD      A, (HL)      ;RAFLAG
7202 2A6C6F  05360      LD      HL, (NEWPOS)
7205 CD0972  05370      CALL    DRAW
7208 C9      05380      RET
05390 ;
05400 ;
05410 ;
05420 ;***** DRAW *****
05430 ;
05440 ; INPUT : HL=>START OF DISPLAY POS
05450 ; DE=>PTR TO SHAPE DB
05460 ; A =>POSITION REAL/ABSTRACT FLAG
05470 ; C =>NO. OF COL TO BE DISPLAY
05480 ; COL PASS AS VAR
05490 ;
05500 ; VAR COLUMN, ROW, ATTR, DRWPOS
05510 ; SKIP, FILL

```

```

05520 ;
05530 ;
05540 ; REG : A,BC,DE,HL,A*
05550 ;
7209 CD9672 05560 DRAW CALL RSHAPE ;RETURN ROW/COL ATTPTR
720C 3A606F 05570 LD A,(ROW)
720F 08 05580 EX AF,AF*
7210 D5 05590 LP0 PUSH DE
7211 E5 05600 PUSH HL ;STORE LINE PTR
7212 3A616F 05610 LD A,(SKIP)
7215 4F 05620 LD C,A
7216 0600 05630 LD B,0
7218 09 05640 ADD HL,BC ;SKIP POS PTR
7219 87 05650 ADD A,A ;MULTIPLE OF 8 BYTES
721A 87 05660 ADD A,A
721B 87 05670 ADD A,A
721C 4F 05680 LD C,A ;SKIP SHAPE PTR
721D EB 05690 EX DE,HL
721E 09 05700 ADD HL,BC
721F EB 05710 EX DE,HL
7220 CB44 05720 BIT 0,H ;CROSS SCREEN SECTION?
7222 2804 05730 JR Z,NOSKIP
7224 3E07 05740 LD A,7 ;IF YES, MOVE UP
7226 B4 05750 ADD A,H
7227 67 05760 LD H,A
7228 3A626F 05770 NOSKIP LD A,(FILL)
722B A7 05780 AND A
722C 2811 05790 JR Z,NXT
722E 4F 05800 LD C,A ;COLUMN TO BE FILLED
722F E5 05810 LP1 PUSH HL ;FILL CHARACTER
7230 0608 05820 LD B,B
7232 1A 05830 LP2 LD A,(DE) ;FILL CHARACTER BYTES
7233 77 05840 LD (HL),A
7234 13 05850 INC DE
7235 24 05860 INC H
7236 10FA 05870 DJNZ LP2
7238 E1 05880 POP HL
7239 0D 05890 DEC C
723A 2803 05900 JR Z,NXT
723C 23 05910 INC HL ;NEXT CHARACTER
723D 18F0 05920 JR LP1
723F 08 05930 NXT EX AF,AF*
7240 E1 05940 POP HL ;RESTORE LINE PTR
7241 D1 05950 POP DE ;SHAPE DB PTR
7242 3D 05960 DEC A ;UPDATE ROW COUNT
7243 281A 05970 JR Z,LDATTR
7245 08 05980 EX AF,AF*
7246 A7 05990 AND A ;CLEAR CARRY
7247 0E20 06000 LD C,20H
7249 ED42 06010 SBC HL,BC ;ONE LINE UP
724B CB44 06020 BIT 0,H ;CROSS SCREEN SECTION?
724D 2804 06030 JR Z,MODDB
724F 7C 06040 LD A,H
7250 D607 06050 SUB 7
7252 67 06060 LD H,A
7253 3A5F6F 06070 MODDB LD A,(COLUMN)

```

7256	87	06080	ADD	A, A	
7257	87	06090	ADD	A, A	
7258	87	06100	ADD	A, A	;UPDATE SHAPE DB
7259	4F	06110	LD	C, A	
725A	EB	06120	EX	DE, HL	
725B	09	06130	ADD	HL, BC	
725C	EB	06140	EX	DE, HL	
725D	18B1	06150	JR	LPO	
725F	2A636F	06160	LDATTR	LD	HL, (ATTPOS)
7262	ED5B6A6F	06170	LD	DE, (ATTPTR)	
7266	3A606F	06180	LD	A, (ROW)	
7269	08	06190	ATROW	EX	AF, AF'
726A	D5	06200	PUSH	DE	
726B	E5	06210	PUSH	HL	
726C	3A616F	06220	LD	A, (SKIP)	
726F	4F	06230	LD	C, A	
7270	0600	06240	LD	B, 0	
7272	09	06250	ADD	HL, BC	;SKIP ATTRIBUTE FILE
7273	EB	06260	EX	DE, HL	
7274	09	06270	ADD	HL, BC	;SKIP ATTRIBUTE DATABASE
7275	EB	06280	EX	DE, HL	
7276	3A626F	06290	LD	A, (FILL)	
7279	A7	06300	AND	A	
727A	2B07	06310	JR	Z, SKIPAT	;SKIP ATTRIBUTE
727C	47	06320	LD	B, A	;FILL ATTRIBUTES
727D	1A	06330	ATTR2	LD	A, (DE)
727E	77	06340	LD	(HL), A	
727F	23	06350	INC	HL	
7280	13	06360	INC	DE	
7281	10FA	06370	DJNZ	ATTR2	
7283	E1	06380	SKIPAT	POP	HL
7284	D1	06390	POP	DE	
7285	3A5F6F	06400	LD	A, (COLUMN)	
7288	A7	06410	AND	A	;CLEAR CARRY
7289	0E20	06420	LD	C, 20H	
728B	ED42	06430	SBC	HL, BC	;NEXT ATTRIBUTE LINE UP
728D	4F	06440	LD	C, A	
728E	EB	06450	EX	DE, HL	
728F	09	06460	ADD	HL, BC	;UPDATE ATTRIBUTE DB
7290	EB	06470	EX	DE, HL	
7291	08	06480	EX	AF, AF'	
7292	3D	06490	DEC	A	
7293	20D4	06500	JR	NZ, ATROW	
7295	C9	06510	RET		
		06520	:		
		06530	:		
		06540	:	***** RSHAPE *****	
		06550	:		
		06560	:	INPUT: HL=>POSITION	
		06570	:	A =>REAL/ABSTRACT FLAG	
		06580	:	DE=>SHAPE PTR	
		06590	:	COLUMN	
		06600	:		
		06610	:	OUTPUT: SKIP, FILL, ATTPOS	
		06620	:		
7296	E5	06630	RSHAPE	PUSH	HL

7297 0B	06640	EX	AF,AF'	; REAL SHAPE
7298 261F	06650	LD	H,1FH	
729A 7C	06660	LD	A,H	
729B A5	06670	AND	L	; TRAP LOWER 5 BITS
729C 6F	06680	LD	L,A	
729D 7C	06690	LD	A,H	
729E 95	06700	SUB	L	; SUBTRACT FROM 1FH
729F 3C	06710	INC	A	
72A0 A4	06720	AND	H	; ADJUST FOR ZERO DIFF
72A1 6F	06730	LD	L,A	
72A2 0B	06740	EX	AF,AF'	
72A3 A7	06750	AND	A	; 0=>ABSTRACT, 1=>REAL
72A4 3A5F6F	06760	LD	A,(COLUMN)	
72A7 200A	06770	JR	NZ,REAL	
72A9 95	06780	SUB	L	
72AA 32626F	06790	LD	(FILL),A	
72AD 7D	06800	LD	A,L	; RELOAD ABS DIFF
72AE 32616F	06810	LD	(SKIP),A	
72B1 1B11	06820	JR	CALATT	
72B3 BD	06830	CP	L	; TAKE MIN OF COL/FILL
72B4 3807	06840	JR	C,TOOBIG	; FILL MORE THAN COL
72B6 7D	06850	LD	A,L	
72B7 A7	06860	AND	A	
72B8 2003	06870	JR	NZ,TOOBIG	
72BA 3A5F6F	06880	LD	A,(COLUMN)	
72BD 32626F	06890	LD	(FILL),A	
72C0 AF	06900	XOR	A	
72C1 32616F	06910	LD	(SKIP),A	
72C4 E1	06920	POP	HL	; CALCULATE ATT PTR
72C5 E5	06930	PUSH	HL	
72C6 7C	06940	LD	A,H	
72C7 E61B	06950	AND	1BH	
72C9 CB2F	06960	SRA	A	
72CB CB2F	06970	SRA	A	
72CD CB2F	06980	SRA	A	
72CF C65B	06990	ADD	A,5BH	
72D1 67	07000	LD	H,A	
72D2 22636F	07010	LD	(ATTPDS),HL	
72D5 E1	07020	POP	HL	
72D6 C9	07030	RET		
	07040 ;			
	07050 ;			
72D7 210040	07060	LD	HL,4000H	; HL=>START OF SCREEN
72DA 110140	07070	LD	DE,4001H	
72DD 01FF17	07080	LD	BC,6143	; SIZE OF SCREEN 17FFH
72E0 AF	07090	XOR	A	; BLANK ACREEN
72E1 77	07100	LD	(HL),A	
72E2 EDB0	07110	LDIR		
72E4 210058	07120	LD	HL,5800H	; SET FIRST LINE FOR SCORE
72E7 110158	07130	LD	DE,5801H	; OF ATTRIBUTE FILE
72EA 011F00	07140	LD	BC,31	
72ED 3607	07150	LD	(HL),7	; INK SEVEN
72EF EDB0	07160	LDIR		
72F1 212058	07170	LD	HL,5820H	; SET ATTRIBUTE
72F4 112158	07180	LD	DE,5821H	; START FROM SECOND LINE
72F7 01DF02	07190	LD	BC,735	

72FA 77	07200	LD	(HL),A	; (PAPER 0)*8 + (INK 0)
72FB EDB0	07210	LDIR		
72FD 21A05B	07220	LD	HL,58A0H	;SET HIGHWAY
7300 116059	07230	LD	DE,5960H	;HIGH, MIDDLE, BOTTOM
7303 01205A	07240	LD	BC,5A20H	
7306 3E3B	07250	LD	A,56	; (PAPER 7)*8 + (INK 0)
730B D9	07260	EXX		
7309 0620	07270	LD	B,32	;FILL ONE LINE
730B D9	07280 HWYATT	EXX		
730C 77	07290	LD	(HL),A	
730D 12	07300	LD	(DE),A	
730E 02	07310	LD	(BC),A	
730F 23	07320	INC	HL	
7310 13	07330	INC	DE	
7311 03	07340	INC	BC	
7312 D9	07350	EXX		
7313 10F6	07360	DJNZ	HWYATT	
7315 D9	07370	EXX		
7316 C9	07380	RET		
	07390 ;			
	07400 ;			
7317 E5	07410 SHAPE	PUSH	HL	;SAVE HL PTR
7318 3A7B6E	07420	LD	A,(FRGDIR)	
731B B7	07430	ADD	A,A	
731C 21AF69	07440	LD	HL,FRGSHP	
731F 1600	07450	LD	D,0	
7321 5F	07460	LD	E,A	
7322 19	07470	ADD	HL,DE	;PTR TO POS OF SHAPE
7323 5E	07480	LD	E,(HL)	;DE RETURN SHAPE PTR
7324 23	07490	INC	HL	
7325 56	07500	LD	D,(HL)	
7326 E1	07510	POP	HL	
7327 C9	07520	RET		
	07530 ;			
	07540 ;			
	07550 ;***** DISASC *****			
	07560 ;			
	07570 ;	display ASCII value from character set		
	07580 ;	NB:---- store DE, the message pointer		
	07590 ;	HL stays the same after display		
	07600 ;	used BC register as well		
	07610 ;			
	07620 ;			
732B C5	07630 DISASC	PUSH	BC	
7329 D5	07640	PUSH	DE	
732A E5	07650	PUSH	HL	
732B 1A	07660	LD	A,(DE)	;LOAD ASCII CHAR
732C 6F	07670	LD	L,A	
732D 2600	07680	LD	H,0	
732F 29	07690	ADD	HL,HL	;MULTIPLE OF 8 BYTES
7330 29	07700	ADD	HL,HL	
7331 29	07710	ADD	HL,HL	
7332 EB	07720	EX	DE,HL	
7333 21003C	07730	LD	HL,CHRSET	;START OF CHARACTER SET
7336 19	07740	ADD	HL,DE	
7337 EB	07750	EX	DE,HL	

733B E1	07760	POP	HL	
7339 060B	07770	DRWCHR	LD B, B	: DRAW CHARACTER
733B E5	07780	PUSH	HL	
733C 1A	07790	CHARLP	LD A, (DE)	
733D 77	07800		LD (HL), A	
733E 13	07810	INC	DE	
733F 24	07820	INC	H	
7340 10FA	07830	DJNZ	CHARLP	
7342 E1	07840	POP	HL	
7343 D1	07850	POP	DE	
7344 23	07860	INC	HL	: POS PTR
7345 13	07870	INC	DE	: MESSAGE PTR
7346 C1	07880	POP	BC	
7347 10DF	07890	DJNZ	DISASC	
7349 C9	07900	RET		
	07910	:		
	07920	:		
734A D9	07930	POLICE	EXX	
734B 216D6E	07940		LD HL, PCAREXT	
734E 7E	07950		LD A, (HL)	: TEST POLICE CAR EXIST
734F E5	07960	PUSH	HL	
7350 D9	07970	EXX		
7351 A7	07980	AND	A	
7352 2023	07990	JR	NZ, MOVPC	: MOVE POLICE CAR
7354 D1	08000	POP	DE	: DB EXT PTR
7355 CDCC77	08010	CALL	RANDNO	: MOVE WHEN MULTIPLE OF
7358 E61F	08020	AND	1FH	: 31
735A FE1F	08030	CP	1FH	
735C C0	08040	RET	NZ	
735D 3E01	08050	LD	A, 1	: SET CHASE FLAG
735F 32726F	08060	LD	(CHASE), A	
7362 21F56E	08070	LD	HL, RPCDB	: RIGHT PC
7365 CDCC77	08080	CALL	RANDNO	
7368 E601	08090	AND	1	
736A 2803	08100	JR	Z, RHTPC	
736C 21DD6E	08110	LD	HL, LPCDB	
736F 010C00	08120	RHTPC	LD BC, 12	
7372 EDB0	08130	LDIR		
7374 D9	08140	EXX		
7375 E5	08150	PUSH	HL	
7376 D9	08160	EXX		
7377 E1	08170	MOVPC	POP HL	: EXISTENCE PTR
7378 23	08180	INC	HL	
7379 23	08190	INC	HL	: DIRECTION
737A 7E	08200	LD	A, (HL)	
737B 47	08210	LD	B, A	: STORE DIR
737C 23	08220	INC	HL	
737D 23	08230	INC	HL	: POSPTR
737E 226E6F	08240	LD	(POSPTR), HL	
7381 5E	08250	LD	E, (HL)	
7382 23	08260	INC	HL	
7383 56	08270	LD	D, (HL)	
7384 1C	08280	INC	E	: ASSUME MOVE RIGHT
7385 A7	08290	AND	A	
7386 2802	08300	JR	Z, PCMRHT	: POLICE CAR MOVE RIGHT
7388 1D	08310	DEC	E	

7389	1D	08320	DEC	E	
738A	ED536C6F	08330	LD	(NEWPOS), DE	
738E	3E02	08340	LD	A, 2	: TWO ROW
7390	32606F	08350	LD	(ROW), A	
7393	3E06	08360	LD	A, 6	
7395	325F6F	08370	LD	(COLUMN), A	
7398	C5	08380	PUSH	BC	: DIRECTION
7399	3A706E	08390	LD	A, (PCARRAP)	: REAL/ABS FLAG
739C	EB	08400	EX	DE, HL	
739D	CD9672	08410	CALL	RSHAP	: RET SKIP/FILL, ATTR
73A0	2A636F	08420	LD	HL, (ATTPOS)	
73A3	F1	08430	POP	AF	
73A4	A7	08440	AND	A	: IF 1, OK
73A5	2004	08450	JR	NZ, PCTAH	: POLICE CAR TEST AHEAD
73A7	010500	08460	LD	BC, 5	
73AA	09	08470	ADD	HL, BC	
73AB	7E	08480	LD	A, (HL)	
73AC	E607	08490	AND	7	
73AE	012000	08500	LD	BC, 32	
73B1	47	08510	AND	A	
73B2	ED42	08520	SBC	HL, BC	
73B4	FE04	08530	CP	4	
73B6	2807	08540	JR	Z, ISFRG2	
73B8	7E	08550	LD	A, (HL)	
73B9	E607	08560	AND	7	
73BB	FE04	08570	CP	4	
73BD	2009	08580	JR	NZ, NFROG2	
73BF	3E01	08590	LD	A, 1	
73C1	327C6F	08600	LD	(CRHFLG), A	: SET CRASH FLAG
73C4	3D	08610	DEC	A	: BLANK COLOUR
73C5	77	08620	LD	(HL), A	: BLANK FRONT OF PC
73C6	09	08630	ADD	HL, BC	
73C7	77	08640	LD	(HL), A	: ** SHOULD BLANK FRONT*
73C8	CD0F73	08650	CALL	STRPC	: STORE NEW UNDERNEATH
73CB	2A6E6F	08660	LD	HL, (POSPTR)	
73CE	ED5B6C6F	08670	LD	DE, (NEWPOS)	
73D2	73	08680	LD	(HL), E	
73D3	23	08690	INC	HL	
73D4	72	08700	LD	(HL), D	
73D5	CD4F71	08710	CALL	MVCTRL	
73D8	D9	08720	EXX		: IF NON-EXIST
73D9	7E	08730	LD	A, (HL)	
73DA	32726F	08740	LD	(CHASE), A	
73DD	D9	08750	EXX		
73DE	C9	08760	RET		
		08770	:		
		08780	:		
		08790	: ***** STRPC *****		
		08800	:		
		08810	: STORE UNDERNEATH POLICE CAR		
		08820	:		
73DF	2A6C6F	08830	STRPC	LD HL, (NEWPOS)	: POS PTR
73E2	11AD6D	08840	LD	DE, PCSTR	: STORAGE LOC
73E5	E8	08850	EX	DE, HL	
73E6	73	08860	LD	(HL), E	: STORE POSITION
73E7	23	08870	INC	HL	

73E8 72	08880	LD	(HL),D	
73E9 23	08890	INC	HL	
73EA EB	08900	EX	DE,HL	
73EB 21606F	08910	LD	HL,ROW	;LOAD 5 BYTES OF INFO
73EE 7E	08920	LD	A,(HL)	
73EF 010500	08930	LD	BC,5	
73F2 ED80	08940	LDIR		
73F4 08	08950	EX	AF,AF'	
73F5 2A6C6F	08960	LD	HL,(NEWPOS)	
73F8 E5	08970 SPCLP1	PUSH	HL	
73F9 3A616F	08980	LD	A,(SKIP)	
73FC 4F	08990	LD	C,A	
73FD 09	09000	ADD	HL,BC	
73FE CB44	09010	BIT	0,H	
7400 2B04	09020	JR	Z,NSSPS	
7402 7C	09030	LD	A,H	
7403 C607	09040	ADD	A,7	
7405 67	09050	LD	H,A	
7406 3A626F	09060 NSSPS	LD	A,(FILL)	
7409 A7	09070	AND	A	
740A 2B0F	09080	JR	Z,NXTSPC	
740C 4F	09090	LD	C,A	
740D E5	09100 SPCLP2	PUSH	HL	;RESTORE CHAR
740E 0608	09110	LD	B,B	
7410 7E	09120 SPCLP3	LD	A,(HL)	;STORE SCREEN FIRST
7411 12	09130	LD	(DE),A	
7412 13	09140	INC	DE	
7413 24	09150	INC	H	
7414 10FA	09160	DJNZ	SPCLP3	
7416 E1	09170	POP	HL	
7417 23	09180	INC	HL	;NEXT CHAR
7418 0D	09190	DEC	C	
7419 20F2	09200	JR	NZ,SPCLP2	
741B E1	09210 NXTSPC	POP	HL	
741C 08	09220	EX	AF,AF'	;UPD ROW COUNT
741D 3D	09230	DEC	A	
741E 2B0F	09240	JR	Z,SPCATR	;RESTORE POLICE ATTR
7420 08	09250	EX	AF,AF'	
7421 0E20	09260	LD	C,32	
7423 ED42	09270	SBC	HL,BC	;UP ONE LINE
7425 CB44	09280	BIT	0,H	;CROSS SCREEN SECTION?
7427 2BCF	09290	JR	Z,SPCLP1	
7429 7C	09300	LD	A,H	
742A D607	09310	SUB	7	
742C 67	09320	LD	H,A	
742D 1BC9	09330	JR	SPCLP1	
742F 2A636F	09340 SPCATR	LD	HL,(ATTRPOS)	;ATTRIBUTE START POS
7432 3A606F	09350	LD	A,(ROW)	
7435 08	09360	EX	AF,AF'	
7436 E5	09370 SPCAT1	PUSH	HL	
7437 3A616F	09380	LD	A,(SKIP)	
743A 4F	09390	LD	C,A	
743B 09	09400	ADD	HL,BC	
743C 3A626F	09410	LD	A,(FILL)	
743F A7	09420	AND	A	
7440 2B03	09430	JR	Z,NXTSPA	

7442 4F	09440	LD	C, A	
7443 EDB0	09450	LDIR		
7445 E1	09460 NXTSPA	POP	HL	
7446 0B	09470	EX	AF, AF'	
7447 3D	09480	DEC	A	
7448 CB	09490	RET	Z	
7449 0B	09500	EX	AF, AF'	
744A 0E20	09510	LD	C, 32	
744C ED42	09520	SBC	HL, BC	
744E 1BE6	09530	JR	SPCAT1	
	09540 ;			
	09550 ;			
7450 3A6D6E	09560 RESPC	LD	A, (PCAREXT)	;TEST PC EXIST
7453 A7	09570	AND	A	
7454 CB	09580	RET	Z	
7455 11606F	09590	LD	DE, ROW	
745B 21AF6D	09600	LD	HL, PCSTR+2	
745B 010500	09610	LD	BC, 5	
745E EDB0	09620	LDIR		;RETRIEVE 5 INFO
7460 EB	09630	EX	DE, HL	;DE STORAGE PTR
7461 2AAD6D	09640	LD	HL, (PCSTR)	;LOAD POS
7464 3A606F	09650	LD	A, (ROW)	
7467 0B	09660	EX	AF, AF'	
7468 E5	09670 RPCLP1	PUSH	HL	;SAVE POS
7469 3A616F	09680	LD	A, (SKIP)	
746C 4F	09690	LD	C, A	
746D 09	09700	ADD	HL, BC	
746E CB44	09710	BIT	O, H	
7470 2B04	09720	JR	Z, NSRPS	
7472 3E07	09730	LD	A, 7	
7474 B4	09740	ADD	A, H	
7475 67	09750	LD	H, A	
7476 3A626F	09760 NSRPS	LD	A, (FILL)	
7479 A7	09770	AND	A	
747A 2B0F	09780	JR	Z, NXTRPC	
747C 4F	09790	LD	C, A	
747D E5	09800 RPCLP2	PUSH	HL	
747E 060B	09810	LD	B, 8	
7480 1A	09820 RPCLP3	LD	A, (DE)	;RESTORE CHAR
7481 77	09830	LD	(HL), A	
7482 13	09840	INC	DE	
7483 24	09850	INC	H	
7484 10FA	09860	DJNZ	RPCLP3	
7486 E1	09870	POP	HL	
7487 23	09880	INC	HL	
748B 0D	09890	DEC	C	
7489 20F2	09900	JR	NZ, RPCLP2	
748B E1	09910 NXTRPC	POP	HL	
748C 0B	09920	EX	AF, AF'	
748D 3D	09930	DEC	A	;UPD ROW COUNT
748E 2B0F	09940	JR	Z, RPCATR	;RETORE POLICE CAR
7490 0B	09950	EX	AF, AF'	
7491 0E20	09960	LD	C, 32	
7493 ED42	09970	SBC	HL, BC	;MOVE UP ONE LINE
7495 CB44	09980	BIT	O, H	
7497 2BCF	09990	JR	Z, RPCLP1	

7499 7C	10000	LD	A, H	
749A D607	10010	SUB	7	; CROSS BOUNDARY
749C 67	10020	LD	H, A	
749D 18C9	10030	JR	RPCLP1	
749F 2A636F	10040	LD	HL, (ATTP05)	; ATTR START LOADING POS
74A2 3A606F	10050	LD	A, (ROW)	
74A5 08	10060	EX	AF, AF'	
74A6 E5	10070	PUSH	HL	
74A7 3A616F	10080	LD	A, (SKIP)	
74AA 4F	10090	LD	C, A	
74AB 09	10100	ADD	HL, BC	
74AC 3A626F	10110	LD	A, (FILL)	
74AF A7	10120	AND	A	
74B0 2805	10130	JR	Z, NXTRPA	
74B2 EB	10140	EX	DE, HL	
74B3 4F	10150	LD	C, A	
74B4 EDB0	10160	LDIR		
74B6 EB	10170	EX	DE, HL	
74B7 E1	10180	POP	HL	
74B8 08	10190	EX	AF, AF'	
74B9 3D	10200	DEC	A	
74BA C8	10210	RET	Z	
74BB 08	10220	EX	AF, AF'	
74BC 0E20	10230	LD	C, 32	
74BE ED42	10240	SBC	HL, BC	
74C0 18E4	10250	JR	RPCAT1	
	10260 ;			
	10270 ;			
74C2 3A7C6F	10280	LD	A, (CRHFLG)	; CRASH FLAG
74C5 A7	10290	AND	A	
74C6 2017	10300	JR	NZ, FRGCRH	; FROG CRASH
74C8 325E6F	10310	LD	(UPDOWN), A	; SET NO SCORE
74CB CDE374	10320	CALL	REGFRG	; REGENERATE FROG
74CE 217A6E	10330	LD	HL, FRGCYC	; TEST MOVE
74D1 35	10340	DEC	(HL)	
74D2 C0	10350	RET	NZ	
74D3 2B	10360	DEC	HL	
74D4 7E	10370	LD	A, (HL)	; RESET CYCLE COUNT
74D5 23	10380	INC	HL	
74D6 77	10390	LD	(HL), A	
74D7 CD1075	10400	CALL	MOVFRG	
74DA 3A7C6F	10410	LD	A, (CRHFLG)	
74DD A7	10420	AND	A	
74DE CB	10430	RET	Z	
74DF CD9176	10440	CALL	CRASH	
74E2 C9	10450	RET		
	10460 ;			
	10470 ;***** REGFRG *****			
	10480 ;			
	10490 ; Regenerate frog if any left			
	10500 ; Set GAMFLG to 0 if none left			
	10510 ;			
74E3 3A796E	10520	LD	A, (FRGEXT)	
74E6 A7	10530	AND	A	
74E7 C0	10540	RET	NZ	; RETURN IF EXIST
74E8 21816E	10550	LD	HL, FRGDB	

74EB	11796E	10560	LD	DE,FRGEXT	
74EE	010800	10570	LD	BC,8	
74F1	ED80	10580	LDIR		
74F3	21846E	10590	LD	HL,FRGSTN	;UPDATE FROG STATION
74F6	35	10600	DEC	(HL)	;MOVE 3 CHARACTER LEFT
74F7	35	10610	DEC	(HL)	
74F8	35	10620	DEC	(HL)	
74F9	2A7C6E	10630	LD	HL,(FRGPOS)	
74FC	22786F	10640	LD	(OLDFRG),HL	
74FF	227A6F	10650	LD	(NEWFRG),HL	
7502	21896D	10660	LD	HL,FRGSTR	;INIT FRG STR FOR RES
7505	118A6D	10670	LD	DE,FRGSTR+1	;BLANK FROG STORE
7508	012300	10680	LD	BC,35	
750B	3600	10690	LD	(HL),0	
750D	ED80	10700	LDIR		
750F	C9	10710	RET		
		10720	:		
		10730	:	MOVFRG	
		10740	:		
		10750	:	Move frog, store and restore	
		10760	:		
7510	AF	10770	MOVFRG	XOR	A
7511	2120E0	10780	LD	HL,0E020H	;H=-32, L=32
7514	4F	10790	LD	C,A	;C=>ABS MOVEMENT
7515	08	10800	EX	AF,AF'	
7516	3EDF	10810	LD	A,0DFH	;TEST RIGHT
7518	DBFE	10820	IN	A,(0FEH)	
751A	E601	10830	AND	1	
751C	2006	10840	JR	NZ,LEFT	
751E	0C	10850	INC	C	
751F	11D769	10860	LD	DE,FROG2	
7522	0601	10870	LD	B,1	
7524	3EDF	10880	LD	A,0DFH	;TEST LEFT
7526	DBFE	10890	IN	A,(0FEH)	
7528	E604	10900	AND	4	
752A	2006	10910	JR	NZ,DOWN	
752C	0D	10920	DEC	C	
752D	11176A	10930	LD	DE,FROG4	
7530	0603	10940	LD	B,3	
7532	3EFD	10950	LD	A,0FDH	;TEST DOWN
7534	DBFE	10960	IN	A,(0FEH)	
7536	E601	10970	AND	1	
7538	200B	10980	JR	NZ,UP	
753A	79	10990	LD	A,C	
753B	85	11000	ADD	A,L	;ADD 32
753C	4F	11010	LD	C,A	
753D	08	11020	EX	AF,AF'	
753E	3D	11030	DEC	A	
753F	08	11040	EX	AF,AF'	;DEC UP/DWN FLG
7540	11F769	11050	LD	DE,FROG3	
7543	0602	11060	LD	B,2	
7545	3EF7	11070	LD	A,0F7H	;TEST UP
7547	DBFE	11080	IN	A,(0FEH)	
7549	E601	11090	AND	1	
754B	200B	11100	JR	NZ,VALID	
754D	79	11110	LD	A,C	

754E 84	11120	ADD	A, H	; ADD -32
754F 4F	11130	LD	C, A	
7550 08	11140	EX	AF, AF'	
7551 3C	11150	INC	A	
7552 08	11160	EX	AF, AF'	
7553 11B769	11170	LD	DE, FROG1	
7556 0600	11180	LD	B, 0	
7558 78	11190	LD	A, B	; STORE TEMP DIR
7559 327D6F	11200	LD	(TEMPDIR), A	
755C ED53806F	11210	LD	(TEMPHP), DE	; STORE TEMP SHAPE
7560 AF	11220	XOR	A	
7561 B9	11230	CP	C	
7562 C8	11240	RET	Z	; IF NO MOVE GO BACK
7563 2A7B6F	11250	LD	HL, (OLDFRG)	
7566 CB79	11260	BIT	7, C	; TEST -VE
7568 47	11270	LD	B, A	
7569 1E07	11280	LD	E, 7	; FOR BOUNDARY ADJ
756B 2B03	11290	JR	Z, NETDWN	; NET MOVE RHT, DWN
756D 05	11300	DEC	B	
756E 1EF9	11310	LD	E, -7	
7570 09	11320	NETDWN	ADD	HL, BC
7571 CB44	11330	BIT	0, H	
7573 2B03	11340	JR	Z, VALID1	; NO CROSS BOUNDARY
7575 7C	11350	LD	A, H	
7576 83	11360	ADD	A, E	
7577 67	11370	LD	H, A	; ADJ HOB
7578 227E6F	11380	VALID1	LD	(TEMPOS), HL
757B EB	11390	EX	DE, HL	
757C 3E40	11400	LD	A, 40H	; TEST UPSCR
757E BA	11410	CP	D	
757F 7B	11420	LD	A, E	
7580 2004	11430	JR	NZ, VALID2	
7582 FE20	11440	CP	20H	
7584 3B2F	11450	JR	C, NVALID	
7586 E61F	11460	VALID2	AND	1FH
7588 FE1F	11470	CP	1FH	; TEST RIGHT BOUNDARY
758A 2B29	11480	JR	Z, NVALID	
758C 21BE50	11490	LD	HL, 50BEH	; TEST BOT BOUNDARY
758F 47	11500	AND	A	
7590 ED52	11510	SBC	HL, DE	
7592 3B21	11520	JR	C, NVALID	
7594 217E50	11530	LD	HL, 507EH	; TEST FROG STATION
7597 ED52	11540	SBC	HL, DE	
7599 3011	11550	JR	NC, YVALID	
759B 7B	11560	LD	A, E	; TEST WITHIN BOX
759C E61F	11570	AND	1FH	
759E 67	11580	LD	H, A	
759F 3AB46E	11590	LD	A, (FRGSTN)	
75A2 FEA0	11600	CP	0A0H	; TEST LAST FROG
75A4 3B06	11610	JR	C, YVALID	; NO MORE FROG STATION
75A6 3C	11620	INC	A	; WHEN NO FROG LEFT
75A7 E61F	11630	AND	1FH	
75A9 94	11640	SUB	H	
75AA 3009	11650	JR	NC, NVALID	
75AC ED537A6F	11660	YVALID	LD	(NEWFRG), DE
75B0 08	11670	EX	AF, AF'	; STORE NEW POS

7581 325E6F	11680	LD	(UPDOWN), A	
7584 08	11690	EX	AF, AF'	
7585 2A786F	11700 NVALID	LD	HL, (OLDFRG)	; TEST OLDFRG=NEWFRG
7588 A7	11710	AND	A	
7589 ED52	11720	SBC	HL, DE	
758B 7D	11730	LD	A, L	
758C B4	11740	OR	H	
758D C8	11750	RET	Z	; RETURN IF SAME
758E CDD675	11760	CALL	RESFRG	; RESTORE FRG
75C1 2A7A6F	11770	LD	HL, (NEWFRG)	; UPDATE OLD FRG POS
75C4 22786F	11780	LD	(OLDFRG), HL	
75C7 217D6F	11790	LD	HL, TEMDIR	
75CA 117B6E	11800	LD	DE, FRGDIR	
75CD 010500	11810	LD	BC, 5	
75D0 EDB0	11820	LDIR		
75D2 CD2876	11830	CALL	STRFRG	
75D5 C9	11840	RET		
	11850 ;			
	11860 ;			
75D6 11896D	11870 RESFRG	LD	DE, FRGSTR	; STORAGE PTR
75D9 2A786F	11880	LD	HL, (OLDFRG)	; RESTORE FROM OLDPOS
75DC E5	11890	PUSH	HL	
75DD 3E02	11900	LD	A, 2	; ROW COUNTER
75DF 08	11910	EX	AF, AF'	
75E0 E5	11920 RFRLP1	PUSH	HL	
75E1 0E02	11930	LD	C, 2	; COLUMN COUNTER
75E3 E5	11940 RFRLP2	PUSH	HL	
75E4 0608	11950	LD	B, 8	
75E6 1A	11960 RFRLP3	LD	A, (DE)	; RESTORE FROM DB
75E7 77	11970	LD	(HL), A	; ONTO SCREEN
75E8 13	11980	INC	DE	
75E9 24	11990	INC	H	; NEXT CHAR BYTE
75EA 10FA	12000	DJNZ	RFRLP3	
75EC E1	12010	POP	HL	
75ED 23	12020	INC	HL	
75EE 0D	12030	DEC	C	; COLUMN COUNT
75EF 20F2	12040	JR	NZ, RFRLP2	
75F1 E1	12050	POP	HL	
75F2 08	12060	EX	AF, AF'	
75F3 3D	12070	DEC	A	; ROW COUNT
75F4 2810	12080	JR	Z, RFRATR	
75F6 08	12090	EX	AF, AF'	
75F7 A7	12100	AND	A	
75F8 0E20	12110	LD	C, 32	; UP ONE LINE
75FA ED42	12120	SBC	HL, BC	
75FC CB44	12130	BIT	0, H	
75FE 28E0	12140	JR	Z, RFRLP1	
7600 7C	12150	LD	A, H	
7601 D607	12160	SUB	7	
7603 67	12170	LD	H, A	
7604 18DA	12180	JR	RFRLP1	
7606 E1	12190 RFRATR	POP	HL	
7607 7C	12200	LD	A, H	
7608 E618	12210	AND	18H	
760A CB2F	12220	SRA	A	
760C CB2F	12230	SRA	A	

760E CB2F	12240	SRA	A	
7610 C65B	12250	ADD	A, 5BH	
7612 67	12260	LD	H, A	
7613 3E02	12270	LD	A, 2	; ROW COUNTER
7615 0B	12280	EX	AF, AF'	
7616 E5	12290	RFRAT1 PUSH	HL	
7617 EB	12300	EX	DE, HL	
7618 0E02	12310	LD	C, 2	; RESTORE ATTR
761A ED80	12320	LDIR		
761C EB	12330	EX	DE, HL	
761D E1	12340	POP	HL	
761E 0B	12350	EX	AF, AF'	
761F 3D	12360	DEC	A	; UPDATE ROW COUNTER
7620 C8	12370	RET	Z	
7621 0B	12380	EX	AF, AF'	
7622 0E20	12390	LD	C, 32	
7624 ED42	12400	SBC	HL, BC	
7626 18EE	12410	JR	RFRAT1	
	12420 ;			
	12430 ;			
762B 11896D	12440	STRFRG LD	DE, FRGSTR	
762B 2A7A6F	12450	LD	HL, (NEWFRG)	; STORE BASE ON NEWPOS
762E D9	12460	EXX		
762F 2A7E6E	12470	LD	HL, (FROGSH)	; LOAD SHAPE AS WELL
7632 D9	12480	EXX		
7633 E5	12490	PUSH	HL	
7634 3E02	12500	LD	A, 2	
7636 0B	12510	EX	AF, AF'	
7637 E5	12520	SFRLP1 PUSH	HL	
7638 0E02	12530	LD	C, 2	
763A E5	12540	SFRLP2 PUSH	HL	
763B 060B	12550	LD	B, B	; STORE AND LOAD A CHAR
763D 7E	12560	SFRLP3 LD	A, (HL)	
763E 12	12570	LD	(DE), A	
763F D9	12580	EXX		
7640 7E	12590	LD	A, (HL)	
7641 23	12600	INC	HL	
7642 D9	12610	EXX		
7643 77	12620	LD	(HL), A	
7644 13	12630	INC	DE	
7645 24	12640	INC	H	
7646 10F5	12650	DJNZ	SFRLP3	
764B E1	12660	POP	HL	
7649 23	12670	INC	HL	; NEXT CHAR
764A 0D	12680	DEC	C	
764B 20ED	12690	JR	NZ, SFRLP2	
764D E1	12700	POP	HL	
764E 0B	12710	EX	AF, AF'	
764F 3D	12720	DEC	A	
7650 2B10	12730	JR	Z, SFRATR	
7652 0B	12740	EX	AF, AF'	
7653 A7	12750	AND	A	
7654 0E20	12760	LD	C, 32	
7656 ED42	12770	SBC	HL, BC	; NEXT ROW
765B CB44	12780	BIT	O, H	
765A 2BDB	12790	JR	Z, SFRLP1	

765C 7C	12800	LD	A,H	
765D D607	12810	SUB	7	
765F 67	12820	LD	H,A	
7660 18D5	12830	JR	SFRLP1	
7662 E1	12840	SFRATR POP	HL	
7663 7C	12850	LD	A,H	; CALCULATE ATTR POS
7664 E618	12860	AND	18H	
7666 C82F	12870	SRA	A	
7668 C82F	12880	SRA	A	
766A C82F	12890	SRA	A	
766C C658	12900	ADD	A,58H	
766E 67	12910	LD	H,A	
766F 3E02	12920	LD	A,2	
7671 08	12930	EX	AF,AF*	
7672 0602	12940	SFRAT1 LD	B,2	
7674 E5	12950	PUSH	HL	
7675 7E	12960	SFRATLP LD	A,(HL)	
7676 12	12970	LD	(DE),A	
7677 3604	12980	LD	(HL),4	; FILL FROG ATTR
7679 23	12990	INC	HL	
767A 13	13000	INC	DE	
767B E607	13010	AND	7	; TEST CRASH
767D 2805	13020	JR	Z,NFROG3	
767F 3E01	13030	LD	A,1	
7681 327C6F	13040	LD	(CRHFLG),A	
7684 10EF	13050	NFROG3 DJNZ	SFRATLP	
7686 E1	13060	POP	HL	
7687 08	13070	EX	AF,AF*	
7688 3D	13080	DEC	A	
7689 C8	13090	RET	Z	
768A 08	13100	EX	AF,AF*	
768B 0E20	13110	LD	C,32	
768D ED42	13120	SBC	HL,BC	
768F 18E1	13130	JR	SFRAT1	
	13140 ;			
	13150 ;			
7691 AF	13160	CRASH XOR	A	
7692 327C6F	13170	LD	(CRHFLG),A	; RESET CRASH FLAG
7695 32796E	13180	LD	(FRGEXT),A	; SET FROG NONEXIST
7698 CDA776	13190	CALL	FRGDIE	; FROG DYING ROUTINE
769B CDD675	13200	CALL	RESFRG	
769E 21826F	13210	LD	HL,NUMFRG	
76A1 35	13220	DEC	(HL)	; DECREASE FROG NUMBER
76A2 C0	13230	RET	NZ	
76A3 32776F	13240	LD	(GAMFLG),A	; ZEROISE GAME FLAG
76A6 C9	13250	RET		; WHEN NO FROG LEFT
	13260 ;			
	13270 ;			
76A7 2A786F	13280	FRGDIE LD	HL,(OLDFRG)	; OLD POS OF FRG
76AA 010240	13290	LD	BC,4002H	; RED COLOUR
76AD D9	13300	EXX		
76AE 21396F	13310	LD	HL,D1ETON	; SET DIE TONE
76B1 D9	13320	EXX		
76B2 7C	13330	LD	A,H	; TEST END OF JOURNEY
76B3 B8	13340	CP	B	
76B4 2016	13350	JR	NZ,NOTEND	

76B6	7D	13360	LD	A,L	
76B7	BB	13370	CP	B	
76B8	3012	13380	JR	NC,NOTEND	
76BA	11466F	13390	LD	DE,SCORE+3	:100 PTS BONUS
76BD	EB	13400	EX	DE,HL	
76BE	34	13410	INC	(HL)	
76BF	21476F	13420	LD	HL,SCORE+4	
76C2	CD4B77	13430	CALL	DISSCR	
76C5	0E06	13440	LD	C,6	:YELLOW
76C7	D9	13450	EXX		
76CB	21156F	13460	LD	HL,HOMTON	
76CB	D9	13470	EXX		
76CC	79	13480	NOTEND	LD	A,C
76CD	32656F	13490	LD	(ATTR),A	
76D0	2A786F	13500	LD	HL,(OLDFRG)	
76D3	ED5B7E6E	13510	LD	DE,(FROGSH)	
76D7	CD7A70	13520	CALL	DRWFRG	
76DA	112000	13530	LD	DE,32	:LINE ADJUST
76DD	19	13540	ADD	HL,DE	
76DE	08	13550	EX	AF,AF'	
76DF	3A656F	13560	LD	A,(ATTR)	
76E2	08	13570	EX	AF,AF'	
76E3	0605	13580	LD	B,5	
76E5	CS	13590	FLASLP	PUSH	BC
76E6	E5	13600	PUSH	HL	:ATTRIBUTE PTR
76E7	AF	13610	XOR	A	:BLACK INK BLACK PAPER
76E8	77	13620	LD	(HL),A	
76E9	23	13630	INC	HL	
76EA	77	13640	LD	(HL),A	
76EB	ED52	13650	SBC	HL,DE	
76ED	77	13660	LD	(HL),A	
76EE	2B	13670	DEC	HL	
76EF	77	13680	LD	(HL),A	
76F0	CD0B77	13690	CALL	FRGTON	:GENERATE FROG TONE
76F3	E1	13700	POP	HL	
76F4	E5	13710	PUSH	HL	
76F5	0B	13720	EX	AF,AF'	
76F6	77	13730	LD	(HL),A	:BLACK PAPER, RED OR
76F7	23	13740	INC	HL	:YELLOW INK
76F8	77	13750	LD	(HL),A	
76F9	A7	13760	AND	A	
76FA	ED52	13770	SBC	HL,DE	
76FC	77	13780	LD	(HL),A	
76FD	2B	13790	DEC	HL	
76FE	77	13800	LD	(HL),A	
76FF	0B	13810	EX	AF,AF'	
7700	CD0B77	13820	CALL	FRGTON	
7703	E1	13830	POP	HL	
7704	C1	13840	POP	BC	
7705	10DE	13850	DJNZ	FLASLP	
7707	C9	13860	RET		
		13870	:		
		13880	:		
7708	D9	13890	FRGTON	EXX	
7709	E5	13900	PUSH	HL	
770A	CD8577	13910	CALL	TONE1	

770D E1	13920	POP	HL		
770E 010400	13930	LD	BC, 4		; MOVE DOWN DATABASE
7711 08	13940	EX	AF, AF'		
7712 FE06	13950	CP	6		
7714 2803	13960	JR	Z, HOME		
7716 01FCFF	13970	LD	BC, -4		; MOVE UP DATABASE
7719 09	13980 HOME	ADD	HL, BC		
771A D9	13990	EXX			
771B 08	14000	EX	AF, AF'		
771C C9	14010	RET			
	14020 ;				
	14030 ;				
771D 3A796E	14040 CALSCR	LD	A, (FRGEXT)		; TEST EXISTENCE
7720 A7	14050	AND	A		
7721 C8	14060	RET	Z		; NO UPDATE OF SCORE
7722 3A5E6F	14070	LD	A, (UPDWN)		; TEST UP/DOWN MOVEMENT
7725 A7	14080	AND	A		; TEST ANY SCORE
7726 C8	14090	RET	Z		
7727 21476F	14100	LD	HL, SCORE+4		; ADD 10 TO SCORE
772A CB7F	14110	BIT	7, A		; TEST MOVE DOWN
772C 2003	14120	JR	NZ, DWNSCR		; DOWN SCORE
772E 34	14130	INC	(HL)		
772F 1B1A	14140	JR	DISSCR		; DIS SCORE
7731 3A796F	14150 DWNSCR	LD	A, (OLDFRG+1)		; TEST HOB
7734 FE40	14160	CP	40H		; TEST FIRST BLOCK
7736 2009	14170	JR	NZ, TLHWY		; TEST LOW HIGHWAY
7738 3A786F	14180	LD	A, (OLDFRG)		
773B FEC0	14190	CP	0C0H		; NOT EVEN STEP ON HWY
773D DB	14200	RET	C		
773E 34	14210	INC	(HL)		
773F 1B0A	14220	JR	DISSCR		
7741 FE50	14230 TLHWY	CP	50H		; TEST IN LOW HWY
7743 C0	14240	RET	NZ		
7744 3A786F	14250	LD	A, (OLDFRG)		
7747 FE20	14260	CP	20H		
7749 D0	14270	RET	NC		; NO SCORE IF STEP HWY
774A 34	14280	INC	(HL)		
774B 0604	14290 DISSCR	LD	B, 4		; HL => TENTH'S POS
774D 7E	14300 ADDLOP	LD	A, (HL)		
774E FE3A	14310 CRYLOP	CP	3AH		; CARRY LOOP
7750 3807	14320	JR	C, UPDDIG		; UPDATE DIGIT
7752 D60A	14330	SUB	10		
7754 2B	14340	DEC	HL		
7755 34	14350	INC	(HL)		; CARRY
7756 23	14360	INC	HL		
7757 1BF5	14370	JR	CRYLOP		
7759 77	14380 UPDDIG	LD	(HL), A		
775A 2B	14390	DEC	HL		
775B 10F0	14400	DJNZ	ADDLOP		
775D 21446F	14410	LD	HL, SCORE+1		
7750 CD6F77	14420	CALL	SCRIMG		; SCORE IMAGE
7763 210640	14430	LD	HL, 4006H		
7766 11596F	14440	LD	DE, IMAGE		
7769 0605	14450	LD	B, 5		
776B CD2873	14460	CALL	DISASC		
776E C9	14470	RET			

```

14480 ;
14490 ;
776F 11596F 14500 SCRIMG LD DE, IMAGE
7772 010500 14510 LD BC, 5
7775 ED80 14520 LDIR
7777 21596F 14530 LD HL, IMAGE
777A 013004 14540 LD BC, 0430H
777D 79 14550 PREZER LD A, C
777E BE 14560 CP (HL) ; TEST 30H
777F 2005 14570 JR NZ, PREZEX
7781 3620 14580 LD (HL), 20H ; SPACE FILL
7783 23 14590 INC HL
7784 10F7 14600 DJNZ PREZER
7786 C9 14610 PREZEX RET
14620 ;
14630 ;
7787 3EBF 14640 SIREN LD A, 0BFH
7789 DBFE 14650 IN A, (0FEH)
778B E601 14660 AND 1
778D 2009 14670 JR NZ, NSOUND
778F 3A736F 14680 LD A, (SOUNDF) ; RESET SOUND CONDITION
7792 3C 14690 INC A
7793 E601 14700 AND 1
7795 32736F 14710 LD (SOUNDF), A
7798 3A736F 14720 NSOUND LD A, (SOUNDF)
779B A7 14730 AND A
779C 2B25 14740 JR Z, DELAY
779E 3A726F 14750 LD A, (CHASE) ; IS POLICE CAR ON
77A1 A7 14760 AND A
77A2 2B1F 14770 JR Z, DELAY
77A4 3A746F 14780 LD A, (TONFLG)
77A7 3C 14790 INC A
77AB E601 14800 AND 1
77AA 32746F 14810 LD (TONFLG), A
77AD 210D6F 14820 LD HL, PCTON1
77B0 2B03 14830 JR Z, TONE1
77B2 21116F 14840 LD HL, PCTON2
77B5 5E 14850 TONE1 LD E, (HL) ; DE=DURATION*FREQUENCY
77B6 23 14860 INC HL
77B7 56 14870 LD D, (HL)
77B8 23 14880 INC HL
77B9 4E 14890 LD C, (HL)
77BA 23 14900 INC HL
77BB 46 14910 LD B, (HL)
77BC C5 14920 PUSH BC
77BD E1 14930 POP HL ; HL=437500/FREQ-30, 125
77BE CDB503 14940 CALL 03B5H
77C1 F3 14950 DI ; 03B5H ENABLE INTERRUPT
77C2 C9 14960 RET
77C3 01001B 14970 DELAY LD BC, 6144
77C6 0B 14980 WAIT DEC BC
77C7 7B 14990 LD A, B
77C8 B1 15000 OR C
77C9 20FB 15010 JR NZ, WAIT
77CB C9 15020 RET
15030 ;

```

```

15040 ;
77CC E5 15050 RANDNO PUSH HL
77CD C5 15060 PUSH BC
77CE 2A756F 15070 LD HL, (RND)
77D1 46 15080 LD B, (HL)
77D2 23 15090 INC HL
77D3 3E3F 15100 LD A, 3FH ; BOUND POINTER WITHIN ROM
77D5 A4 15110 AND H
77D6 67 15120 LD H, A
77D7 78 15130 LD A, B
77D8 22756F 15140 LD (RND), HL
77DB C1 15150 POP BC
77DC E1 15160 POP HL
77DD C9 15170 RET
15180 ;
15190 ;
77DE 21446F 15200 OVER LD HL, SCORE+1 ; HIGH SCORE MANAGE
77E1 11546F 15210 LD DE, HISCR
77E4 0605 15220 LD B, 5
77E6 1A 15230 SORTLP LD A, (DE)
77E7 BE 15240 CP (HL)
77E8 2803 15250 JR Z, SAMSCR ; TEST 1ST NE DIGIT
77EA D0 15260 RET NC
77EB 1805 15270 JR SCRGT ; UPDATE HIGH SCORE
77ED 13 15280 SAMSCR INC DE
77EE 23 15290 INC HL
77EF 10F5 15300 DJNZ SORTLP
77F1 C9 15310 RET
77F2 21446F 15320 SCRGT LD HL, SCORE+1
77F5 11546F 15330 LD DE, HISCR
77FB 010500 15340 LD BC, 5
77FB EDB0 15350 LDIR
77FD C9 15360 RET
15370 ;
15380 ;
77FE 3E38 15390 FINAL LD A, 56 ; SET WHITE BORDER
7800 32485C 15400 LD (23624), A
7803 210040 15410 LD HL, 4000H ; START OF SCREEN
7806 110140 15420 LD DE, 4001H
7809 01FF17 15430 LD BC, 6143 ; SIZE OF SCREEN
780C 3600 15440 LD (HL), 0
780E EDB0 15450 LDIR
7810 210058 15460 LD HL, 5800H ; START OF ATTRIBUTE FILE
7813 110158 15470 LD DE, 5801H
7816 01FF02 15480 LD BC, 767
7819 3638 15490 LD (HL), 56 ; WHITE PAPER BLACK INK
781B EDB0 15500 LDIR
781D C9 15510 RET
15520 ;
15530 ;
6978 15540 END START
00000 Total errors

```


APPENDIX A SPECTRUM KEY INPUT TABLE

Input Value in A for 0FE H	D4	D3	D2	D1	D0
0FE H	V	C	X	Z	CAP SHIFT
0FD H	G	F	D	S	A
0FB H	7	R	E	W	Q
0F7 H	5	4	3	2	1
0EF H	6	7	8	9	0
0DF H	Y	U	I	O	P
0BF H	H	J	K	L	ENTER
07F H	B	N	M	SYM SHIFT	BREAK SPACE
	16	8	4	2	1

X:

NB: To trap a key

- Load A with INPUT VALUE of the corresponding row.
LD A, 07FH ;Bottom Row
- Fetch from input port OFEH.
IN A, (OFEH)
- Test Dx set to low for desired key.
AND I ;trap BREAK/SPACE key
- If zero, then key is set.
JR Z,keyset ;normal state is always
;high

APPENDIX B

MEMORY ATTRIBUTE		LINE	MEMORY ATTRIBUTE	
IN HEX	IN HEX		IN HEX	IN HEX
4000	5800	0	401F	581F
4020	5820	1	403F	583F
4040	5840	2	405F	585F
4060	5860	3	407F	587F
4080	5880	4	409F	589F
40A0	58A0	5	40BF	58BF
40C0	58C0	6	40DF	58DF
40E0	58E0	7	40FF	58FF
4800	5900	8	481F	591F
4820	5920	9	483F	593F
4840	5940	10	485F	595F
4860	5960	11	487F	597F
4880	5980	12	489F	599F
48A0	59A0	13	48BF	59BF
48C0	59C0	14	48DF	59DF
48E0	59E0	15	48FF	59FF
5000	5A00	16	501F	5A1F
5020	5A20	17	503F	5A3F
5040	5A40	18	505F	5A5F
5060	5A60	19	507F	5A7F
5080	5A80	20	509F	5A9F
50A0	5AA0	21	50BF	5ABF
50C0	5AC0	22	50DF	5ADF
50E0	5AE0	23	50FF	5AFF

APPENDIX C

SPECTRUM CHARACTER SET TABLE

HEX LOB	H0B	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	BITS	000	001	010	011	100	101	110	111
0	0000	NU	INK ctrl	SPACE	0	@	P	f	p
/	0001	NU	PAPER ctrl	|	1	A	Q	a	q
2	0010	NU	FLASH ctrl	"	2	B	R	b	r
3	0011	NU	BRIGHT ctrl	#	3	C	S	c	s
4	0100	NU	INVERSE ctrl	\$	4	D	T	d	t
5	0101	Nu	OVER ctrl	%	5	E	U	e	u
6	0110	PRINT	AT ctrl	&	6	F	V	f	v
7	0111	EDIT	TAB ctrl	'	7	G	W	g	w
8	1000	cursor left	NU	(	8	H	X	h	x
9	1001	cursor right	NU	)	9	I	Y	i	y
A	1010	cursor down	NU	*	:	J	Z	j	z
B	1011	cursor up	NU	+	:	K	[	k	}
C	1100	DELETE	NU	,	<	L	/	l	}
D	1101	ENTER	NU	-	=	M	]	m	}
E	1110	number	NU	.	>	N	↑	n	}
F	1111	NU	NU	/	?	O	_	o	⊙

NB: NU = Not Used.

APPENDIX D

DECIMAL HEXADECIMAL CONVERSION TABLES

HEX	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	00XX	XX00
0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	0	0
1	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	256	4096
2	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	512	8192
3	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	768	12288
4	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	1024	16384
5	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	1280	20480
6	96	97	98	99	100	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110	111	1536	24576
7	112	113	114	115	116	117	118	119	120	121	122	123	124	125	126	127	1792	28672
8	128	129	130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137	138	139	140	141	142	143	2048	32768
9	144	145	146	147	148	149	150	151	152	153	154	155	156	157	158	159	2304	36864
A	160	161	162	163	164	165	166	167	168	169	170	171	172	173	174	175	2560	40960
B	176	177	178	179	180	181	182	183	184	185	186	187	188	189	190	191	2816	45056
C	192	193	194	195	196	197	198	199	200	201	202	203	204	205	206	207	3072	49152
D	208	209	210	211	212	213	214	215	216	217	218	219	220	221	222	223	3328	53248
E	224	225	226	227	228	229	230	231	232	233	234	235	236	237	238	239	3584	57344
F	240	241	242	243	244	245	246	247	248	249	250	251	252	253	254	255	3840	61440

Appendix D

We can demonstrate using this table by working through an example.

Let's find the Hexadecimal equivalent of the decimal number 6200.

We have to determine the 16-bit binary number;

ie	bbbbbbbb	bbbbbbbb
	HOB	LOB

i. From the leftmost column of the table under the heading xx00, we find that 6200 is between 4096 and 8192. So we choose the lower value 4096 and from the row value, we take the most significant four bits of the HOB (High Order Byte) to be 1 ie 01.

0001bbbb	bbbbbbbb
HOB	LOB

ii. The second step is to determine the less significant four bits of the HOB. We find the difference of 6200 and 4096 to be 2104. Since the difference is still greater than 255, we refer to the second leftmost column of the table under the column heading 00xx and find that 2104 is between 2048 and 2304. Again we take the lower value 2048 and arrive from the row value that the less significant four bytes of HOB is 8 ie 1000.

00011000	bbbbbbbb
HOB	LOB

iii. The third step is to determine the LOB (Low Order Byte) for the number. We find the difference between 2104 and 2048 as 56. From the large middle big sub-table we find that 56 is at the intersection of row 3 and column 8. So we take the LOB as 38H.

00011000	00111000
HOB	LOB

So the HEX-value of the number 6200 is 1838H.

APPENDIX E

2's COMPLEMENT DECIMAL HEXADECIMAL CONVERSION TABLE

HEX	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
8	-128	-127	-126	-125	-124	-123	-122	-121	-120	-119	-118	-117	-116	-115	-114	-113
9	-112	-111	-110	-109	-108	-107	-106	-105	-104	-103	-102	-101	-100	-99	-98	-97
A	-96	-95	-94	-93	-92	-91	-90	-89	-88	-87	-86	-85	-84	-83	-82	-81
B	-80	-79	-78	-77	-76	-75	-74	-73	-72	-71	-70	-69	-68	-67	-66	-65
C	-64	-63	-62	-61	-60	-59	-58	-57	-56	-55	-54	-53	-52	-51	-50	-49
D	-48	-47	-46	-45	-44	-43	-42	-41	-40	-39	-38	-37	-36	-35	-34	-33
E	-32	-31	-30	-29	-28	-27	-26	-25	-24	-23	-22	-21	-20	-19	-18	-17
F	-16	-15	-14	-13	-12	-11	-10	-9	-8	-7	-6	-5	-4	-3	-2	-1

APPENDIX F

HEXADECIMAL ADDITION TABLE

+	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10
2	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11
3	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12
4	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13
5	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14
6	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15
7	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
8	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
9	9	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18
A	A	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
B	B	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A
C	C	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B
D	D	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C
E	E	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D
F	F	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	1A	1B	1C	1D	1E

APPENDIX G

FLAG OPERATION SUMMARY TABLE

INSTRUCTION	C	Z	P/V	S	N	H	COMMENTS
ADC HL, SS	#	#	V	#	0	X	16-bit add with carry
ADX s; ADD s	#	#	V	#	0	#	8-bit add or add with carry
ADD DD, SS	#	—	—	—	0	X	16-bit add
AND s	0	#	P	#	0	1	Logical operations
BIT b, s	—	#	X	X	0	1	State of bit b of location s is copied into the Z flag
CCF	#	—	—	—	0	X	Complement carry
CPD; CPDR; CPI; CPIR	—	#	#	X	1	X	Block search instruction Z=1 if A=(HL), else Z=0 P/V=1 if BC≠0, otherwise P/V=0
CP s	#	#	V	#	1	#	Compare accumulator
CPL	—	—	—	—	1	1	Complement accumulator
DAA	#	#	P	#	—	#	Decimal adjust accumulator
DEC s	—	#	V	#	1	#	8-bit decrement
IN r, (C)	—	#	P	#	0	0	Input register indirect
INC s	—	#	V	#	0	#	8-bit increment
IND; INI	—	#	X	X	1	X	Block input Z=0 if B≠0 else Z=1
INDR:INIR	—	1	X	X	1	X	Block input Z=0 if B≠0 else Z=1
LD A,I ; LD A,R	—	#	IFF	#	0	0	Content of interrupt enable Flip-Flop is copied into the P/V flag
LDD; LDI	—	X	#	X	0	0	Block transfer instructions
LDDR; LDIR	—	X	0	X	0	0	P/V=1 if BC≠0, otherwise P/V=0
NEG	#	#	V	#	1	#	Negate accumulator
OR s	0	#	P	#	0	0	Logical OR accumulator
OTDR; OTIR	—	1	X	X	1	X	Block output; Z=0 if B≠0 otherwise Z=1
OUTD; OUTI	—	#	X	X	1	X	Block output; Z=0 if B≠0 otherwise Z=1
RLA; RLCA; RRA; RRCA	#	—	—	—	0	0	Rotate accumulator
RLD; RRD	—	#	P	#	0	/	Rotate digit left and right
RLS; RLC s; RR s; RRC s SLA s; SRA s; SRL s	#	#	P	#	0	0	Rotate and shift location s
SBC HL, SS	#	#	V	#	1	X	16-bit subtract with carry
SCF	1	—	—	—	0	0	Set carry
SBC s; SUB s			V		1		8-bit subtract with carry
XOR x	0		P		0	0	Exclusive OR accumulator

Appendix G

SYMBOL	OPERATION
C	Carry flag. C=1 if the operation produced a carry from the most significant bit of the operand or result.
Z	Zero flag. Z=1 if the result of the operation is zero.
S	Sign flag. S=1 if the most significant bit of the result is one, ie a negative number.
P/V	Parity or overflow flag. Parity (P) and overflow (O) share the same flag. Logical operations affect this flag with the parity of the result while arithmetic operations affect this flag with the overflow of the result. If P/V holds parity, P/V=1 if the result of the operation is even, P/V=0 if result is odd. If P/V holds overflow, P/V=1 if the result of the operation produced an overflow.
H	Half-carry flag. H=1 if the add or subtract operation produced a carry into or borrow from bit 4 of the accumulator.
N	Add/Subtract flag. N=1 if the previous operations was a subtract.
	H and N flags are used in conjunction with the decimal adjust instruction (DAA) to properly correct the result into packed BCD format following addition or subtraction using operands with packed BCD format.
#	The flag is affected according to the result of the operation.
-	The flag is unchanged by the operation.
0	The flag is reset (=0) by the operation.
1	The flag is set (=1) by the operation.
X	The flag result is unknown.
V	The P/V flag is affected according to the overflow result of the operation.
P	P/V flag is affected according to the parity result of the operation.
r	Any one of the CPU registers A,B,C,D,E,H,L.
s	Any 8-bit location for all the addressing modes allowed for the particular instructions.
SS	Any 16-bit location for all the addressing modes allowed for that instruction.
R	Refresh register
n	8-bit value in range 0-255.
nn	16-bit value in range 0-65535.

APPENDIX H
Z80—CPU INSTRUCTIONS SORTED BY OP-CODE

HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC
00	NOP	49	LD C,C	92	SUB D
01 XXXX	LD BC,NN	4A	LD C,D	93	SUB E
02	LD (BC),A	4B	LD C,E	94	SUB H
03	INC BC	4C	LD C,H	95	SUB L
04	INC B	4D	LD C,L	96	SUB (HL)
05	DEC B	4E	LD C,(HL)	97	SUB A
06XX	LD B,N	4F	LD C,A	98	SBC A,B
07	RLCA	50	LD D,B	99	SBC A,C
08	EX AF, AF'	51	LD D,C	9A	SBC A,D
09	ADD HL,BC	52	LD D,D	9B	SBC A,E
0A	LD A, (BC)	53	LD D,E	9C	SBC A,H
0B	DEC BC	54	LD D,H	9D	SBC A,L
0C	INC C	55	LD D,L	9E	SBC A,(HL)
0D	DEC C	56	LD D,(HL)	9F	SBC A,A
0EXX	LD C,N	57	LD D,A	A0	AND B
0F	RRCA	58	LD E,B	A1	AND C
10XX	DJNZ DIS	59	LD E,C	A2	AND D
11XXXX	LD DE,NN	5A	LD E,D	A3	AND E
12	LD (DE),A	5B	LD E,E	A4	AND H
13	INC DE	5C	LD E,H	A5	AND L
14	INC D	5D	LD E,L	A6	AND (HL)
15	DEC D	5E	LD E,(HL)	A7	AND A
16XX	LD D,N	5F	LD E,A	A8	XOR B
17	RLA	60	LD H,B	A9	XOR C
18XX	JR DIS	61	LD H,C	AA	XOR D
19	ADD HL,DE	62	LD H,D	AB	XORE
1A	LD A,(DE)	63	LD H,E	AC	XOR H
1B	DEC DE	64	LD H,H	AD	XOR L
1C	INC E	65	LD H,L	AE	XOR (HL)
1D	DEC E	66	LD H,(HL)	AF	XOR A
1EXX	LD E,N	67	LD H,A	B0	OR B
1F	RRA	68	LD L,B	B1	OR C
20XX	JR NZ,DIS	69	LD L,C	B2	OR D
21XXXX	LD HL,NN	6A	LD L,D	B3	OR E
22XXXX	LD (NN),HL	6B	LD L,E	B4	OR H
23	INC HL	6C	LD L,H	B5	OR L
24	INC H	6D	LD L,L	B6	OR (HL)
25	DEC H	6E	LD L,(HL)	B7	OR A
26XX	LD H,N	6F	LD L,A	B8	CP B
27	DAA	70	LD (HL),B	B9	CP C
28XX	JR Z,DIS	71	LD (HL),C	BA	CP D
29	ADD HL,HL	72	LD (HL),D	BB	CP E
2AXXXX	LD HL,(NN)	73	LD (HL),E	BC	CP H
2B	DEC HL	74	LD (HL),H	BD	CP L
2C	INC L	75	LD (HL),L	BE	CP (HL)
2D	DEC L	76	HALT	BF	CP A
2EXX	LD L,N	77	LD (HL),A	C0	RET NZ
2F	CPL	78	LD A,B	C1	POP BC
30XX	JR NC,DIS	79	LD A,C	C2XXXX	JP NZ,NN
31XXXX	LD SP,NN	7A	LD A,D	C3XXXX	JP NN
32XXXX	LD (NN),A	7B	LD A,E	C4XXXX	CALL NZ,NN
33	INC SP	7C	LD A,H	C5	PUSH BC
34	INC (HL)	7D	LD A,L	C6XX	ADD A,N
35	DEC (HL)	7E	LD A,(HL)	C7	RST 0
36XX	LD (HL),N	7F	LD A,A	C8	RET Z
37	SCF	80	ADD A,B	C9	RET
38XX	JR C,DIS	81	ADD A,C	CAXXXX	JP Z,NN
39	ADD HL,SP	82	ADD A,D	CCXXXX	CALL Z,NN
3AXXXX	LD A,(NN)	83	ADD A,E	CDXXXX	CALL NN
3B	DEC SP	84	ADD A,H	CEXX	ADC A,N
3C	INC A	85	ADD A,L	CF	RST 8
3D	DEC A	86	ADD A,(HL)	D0	RET NC
3EXX	LD A,N	87	ADD A,A	D1	POP DE
3F	CCF	88	ADC A,B	D2XXXX	JP NC,NN
40	LD B,B	89	ADC A,C	D3XX	OUT (N),A
41	LD B,C	8A	ADC A,D	D4XXXX	CALL NC,NN
42	LD B,D	8B	ADC A,E	D5	PUSH DE
43	LD B,E	8C	ADC A,H	D6XX	SUB N
44	LD B,H	8D	ADC A,L	D7	RST 10H
45	LD B,L	8E	ADC A,(HL)	D8	RET C
46	LD B,(HL)	8F	ADC A,A	D9	EXX
47	LD B,A	90	SUB B	DAXXXX	JP C,NN
48	LD C,B	91	SUB C	DBXX	IN A,(N)

HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC
DCXXX	CALL C,NN	CB28	SRA B	CB79	BIT 7,C
DEXX	SBC A,N	CB29	SRA C	CB7A	BIT 7,D
DF	RST 18H	CB2A	SRA D	CB7B	BIT 7,E
E0	RET P0	CB2B	SRA E	CB7C	BIT 7,H
E1	POP HL	CB2C	SRA H	CB7D	BIT 7,L
E2XXX	JP PO,NN	CB2D	SRA L	CB7E	BIT 7,(HL)
E3	EX (SP),HL	CB2E	SRA (HL)	CB7F	BIT 7,A
E4XXX	CALL PO,NN	CB2F	SRA A	CB80	RES 0,B
E5	PUSH HL	CB38	SRL B	CB81	RES 0,C
E6XX	AND N	CB39	SRL C	CB82	RES 0,D
E7	RST 20 H	CB3A	SRL D	CB83	RES 0,E
E8	RET PE	CB3B	SRL E	CB84	RES 0,H
E9	JP (HL)	CB3C	SRL H	CB85	RES 0,L
EAXXXX	JE PE NN	CB3D	SRL L	CB86	RES 0,(HL)
EB	EX DE,HL	CB3E	SRL (HL)	CB87	RES 0,A
ECXXX	CALL PE,NN	CB3F	SRL A	CB88	RES 1,B
EEXX	XOR N	CB40	BIT 0,B	CB89	RES 1,C
EF	RST 28H	CB41	BIT 0,C	CB8A	RES 1,D
F0	RET P	CB42	BIT 0,D	CB8B	RES 1,E
F1	POP AF	CB43	BIT 0,E	CB8C	RES 1,H
F2XXX	JR P,NN	CB44	bit 0,H	CB8D	RES 1,L
F3	DI	CB45	BIT 0,L	CB8E	RES 1,(HL)
F4XXX	CALL P,NN	CB46	BIT 0,(HL)	CB8F	RES 1,A
F5	PUSH AF	CB47	BIT 0,A	CB90	RES 2,B
F620XX	OR N	CB48	Bit 1,B	CB91	RES 2,C
F7	RST 30H	CB49	BIT 1,C	CB92	RES 2,D
F8	RET M	CB4A	BIT 1,D	CB93	RES 2,E
F9	LD,SP,HL	CB4B	BIT 1,E	CB94	RES 2,H
FAXXXX	JPM,NN	CB4C	BIT 1,H	CB95	RES 2,L
FB	EI	CB4D	BIT 1,L	CB96	RES 2,(HL)
FCXXX	CALL M,NN	CB4E	BIT 1,(HL)	CB97	RES 2,A
FE20XX	CP N	CB4F	BIT 1,A	CB98	RES 3,B
FF	RST 38H	CB50	BIT 2,B	CB99	RES 3,C
CB00	RLC B	CB51	BIT 2,C	CB9A	RES 3,D
CB01	RLC C	CB52	BIT 2,D	CB9B	RES 3,E
CB02	RLC D	CB53	BIT 2,E	CB9C	RES e,H
CB03	RLC E	CB54	BIT 2,H	CB9D	RES 3,L
CB04	RLC H	CB55	BIT 2,L	CB9E	RES 3,(HL)
CB05	RLC L	CB56	BIT 2,(HL)	CB9F	RES 3,A
CB06	RLC (HL)	CB57	BIT 2,A	CBA0	RES 4,B
CB07	RLC A	CB58	BIT 3,B	CBA1	RES 4,C
CB08	RRC B	CB59	BIT 3,C	CBA2	RES 4,D
CB09	RRC C	CB5A	BIT 3,D	CBA3	RES e,E
CB0A	RRC D	CB5B	BIT 3,E	CBA4	RES e,H
CB0B	RRC E	CB5C	BIT 3,H	CBA5	RES 4,L
CB0C	RRC H	CB5D	BIT 3,L	CBA6	RES 4,(HL)
CB0D	RRC L	CB5E	BIT 3,(HL)	CBA7	RES 4,A
CB0E	RRC (HL)	CB5F	BIT 3,A	CBA8	RES 5,B
CB0F	RRC A	CB60	BIT 4,B	CBA9	RES 5,C
CB10	RL B	CB61	BIT 4,C	CBAA	RES 5,D
CB11	RL C	CB62	BIT 4,D	CBA8	RES 5,E
CB12	RL D	CB63	BIT 4,E	CBAC	RES 5,H
CB13	RL E	CB64	BIT 4,H	CBAD	RES 5,L
CB14	RL H	CB65	BIT 4,L	CBAE	RES 5,(HL)
CB15	RL L	CB66	BIT 4,(HL)	CBAF	RES 5,A
CB16	RL (HL)	CB67	BIT 4,A	CB80	RES 6,B
CB17	RL A	CB68	BIT 5,B	CB81	RES 6,C
CB18	RR B	CB69	BIT 5,C	CB82	RES 6,D
CB19	RR C	CB6A	BIT 5,D	CB83	RES 6,E
CB1A	RR D	CB6B	BIT 5,E	CB84	RES 6,H
CB1B	RR E	CB6C	BIT 5,H	CB85	RES 6,L
CB1C	RR H	CB6D	BIT 5,L	CB86	RES 6,(HL)
CB1D	RR L	CB6E	BIT 5,(HL)	CB87	RES 7,A
CB1E	RR (HL)	CB6F	BIT 5,A	CB88	RES 7,B
CB1F	RR A	CB70	BIT 6,B	CB89	RES 7,C
CB20	SLA B	CB71	BIT 6,C	CB8A	RES 7,D
CB21	SLA C	CB72	BIT 6,D	CB8B	RES 7,E
CB22	SLA D	CB73	BIT 6,E	CB8C	RES 7,H
CB23	SLA E	CB74	BIT 6,H	CB8D	RES 7,L
CB24	SLA H	CB75	BIT 6,L	CB8E	RES 7,(HL)
CB25	SLA L	CB76	BIT 6,(HL)	CB8F	RES 7,A
CB26	SLA (HL)	CB77	BIT 6,A	CB80	SET 0,B
CB27	SLA A	CB78	BIT 7,B	CB81	SET 0,C
				CB82	SET 0,D

HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC
CBC3	SET 0,E	DD4EXX	LD C,(IX+d)	ED53XXXX	LD(NN),DE
CBC4	SET 0,H	DD56XX	LD D,(IX+d)	ED56	IN 1
CBC5	SET 0,L	DD5EXX	LD E,(IX+d)	ED57	LD A,1
CBC6	SET 0,(HL)	DD66XX	LD H,(IX+d)	ED58	IN E,(C)
CBC7	SET 0,A	DD6EXX	LD L,(IX+d)	ED59	OUT (C),E
CBC8	SET 1,B	DD70XX	LD (IX+d),B	ED5A	ADC HL,DE
CBC9	SET 1,C	DD71XX	LD (IX+d),C	ED5BXXXX	LD DE,(NN)
CBCA	SET 1,D	DD72XX	LD (IX+d),D	ED5E	IM 2
CBCB	SET 1,E	DD73XX	LD (IX+d),E	ED5F	LD A,R
CBCD	SET 1,H	DD74XX	LD (IX+d),H	ED60	IN H,(C)
CBCD	SET 1,L	DD75XX	LD (IX+d),L	ED61	OUT(C),H
CBCF	SET 1,(HL)	DD77XX	LD (IX+d),A	ED62	SBC HL,HL
CBCF	SET 1,A	DD7EXX	LD A,(IX+d)	ED63XXXX	LD(NN),HL
CBD0	SET 2,B	DD86XX	ADD A,(IX+d)	ED67	RRD
CBD1	SET 2,C	DD8EXX	ADC A,(IX+d)	ED68	IN L,(C)
CBD2	SET 2,D	DD96XX	SUB(IX+d)	ED69	OUT(C),L
CBD3	SET 2,E	DD9EXX	SBC A,(IX+d)	ED6A	ADC HL,HL
CBD4	SET 2,H	DDA6XX	AND(IX+d)	ED6BXXXX	LDHL,(ADDR)
CBD5	SET 2,L	DDAEXX	XOR(IX+d)	ED6F	RLD
CBD6	SET 2,(HL)	DDB6XX	OR(IX+d)	ED72	SBC HL,SP
CBD7	SET 2,A	DDBEXX	CP(IX+d)	ED73XXXX	LD(NN),SP
CBD8	SET 3,B	DDE1	POP IX	ED78	IN A,(C)
CBD9	SET 3,C	DDE3	EX(SP),IX	ED79	OUT(C),A
CBD9	SET 3,D	DDE5	PUSH IX	ED7A	ADC HL,SP
CBD9	SET 3,E	DDE9	JP(IX)	ED7BXXXX	LD SP,(NN)
CBD9	SET 3,H	DDF9	LD SP,IX	EDA0	LDI
CBD9	SET 3,L	DDC8XX06	RLC(IX+d)	EDA1	CPI
CBD9	SET 3,(HL)	DDC8XX0E	RRC(IX+d)	EDA2	INI
CBD9	SET 3,A	DDC8XX16	RL(IX+d)	EDA3	OUTI
CBE0	SET 4,B	DDC8XX1E	RR(IX+d)	EDA8	LDD
CBE1	SET 4,C	DDC8XX26	SLA(IX+d)	EDA9	CPD
CBE2	SET 4,D	DDC8XX2E	SRA(IX+d)	EDAA	IND
CBE3	SET 4,E	DDC8XX3E	SRL(IX+d)	EDAB	OUTD
CBE4	SET 4,H	DDC8XX46	BIT 0,(IX+d)	EDB0	LDIR
CBE5	SET 4,L	DDC8XX4E	BIT 1,(IX+d)	EDB1	CPIR
CBE6	SET 4,(HL)	DDC8XX56	BIT 2,(IX+d)	EDB2	INIR
CBE7	SET 4,A	DDC8XX5E	BIT 3,(IX+d)	EDB3	OTIR
CBE8	SET 5,B	DDC8XX66	BIT 4,(IX+d)	EDB8	LDDR
CBE9	SET 5,C	DDC8XX6E	BIT 5,(IX+d)	ECB9	CPDR
CBEA	SET 5,D	DDC8XX76	BIT 6,(IX+d)	ECBA	INDR
CBEB	SET 5,E	DDC8XX7E	BIT 7,(IX+d)	ECB8	OTDR
CBE9	SET 5,H	DDC8XX86	RES 0,(IX+d)	ED09	ADDIY,BC
CBE9	SET 5,L	DDC8XX8E	RES 1,(IX+d)	ED19	ADDIY,DE
CBE9	SET 5,(HL)	DDC8XX96	RES 2,(IX+d)	ED21XXXX	LDIY,NN
CBEF	SET 5,A	DDC8XX9E	RES 3,(IX+d)	FD22XXXX	LD(NN),IY
CBF0	SET 6,B	DDC8XXA6	RES 4,(IX+d)	FD23	INC IY
CBF1	SET 6,C	DDC8XXAE	RES 5,(IX+d)	FD29	ADD IY,IY
CBF2	SET 6,D	DDC8XXB6	RES 6,(IX+d)	FD2AXXX	LD IY,(NN)
CBF3	SET 6,E	DDC8XXBE	RES 7,(IX+d)	FD2B	DEC IY
CBF4	SET 6,H	DDC8XXC6	SET 0,(IX+d)	FD34XX	INC(IY+d)
CBF5	SET 6,L	DDC8XXCE	SET 1,(IX+d)	FD35XX	DEC(IY+d)
CBF6	SET 6,(HL)	DDC8XXD6	SET 2,(IX+d)	FD36XX20	LD(IY+d),N
CBF7	SET 6,A	DDC8XXDE	SET 3,(IX+d)	FD39	ADD IY,SP
CBF8	SET 7,B	DDC8XXE6	SET 4,(IX+d)	FD46XX	LD B,(IY+d)
CBF9	SET 7,C	DDC8XXEE	SET 5,(IX+d)	FD3EXX	LD C,(IY+d)
CBFA	SET 7,D	DDC8XXF6	SET 6,(IX+d)	FD56XX	LD D,(IY+d)
CBFB	SET 7,E	DDC8XXFE	SET 7,(IX+d)	FD5EXX	LD E,(IY+d)
CBFC	SET 7,H	ED40	IN B,(C)	FD66XX	LD H,(IY+d)
CBFD	SET 7,L	ED41	OUT(C),B	FD6EXX	LD L,(IY+d)
CBFE	SET 7,(HL)	ED42	SBC HL,BC	FD70XX	LD (IY+d),B
CBFF	SET 7,A	ED43XXXX	LD(NN),BC	FD71XX	LD (IY+d),C
DD09	ADD IX,BC	ED44	NEG	FD72XX	LD (IY+d),D
DD19	ADD IX,DE	ED45	RETN	FD73XX	LD (IY+d),E
DD21XXXX	LD IX,NN	ED46	IM 0	FD74XX	LD (IY+d),H
DD22XXXX	LD(NN),IX	ED47	LDI A	FD75XX	LD (IY+d),L
DD23	INC IX	ED48	IN C,(C)	FD77XX	LD (IY+d),A
DD29	ADD IX,IX	ED49	OUT(C),C	FD7EXX	LD A,(IY+d)
DD2AXXX	LD IX,(NN)	ED4A	ADC HL,BC	FD86XX	ADD A,(IY+d)
DD28	DEC IX	ED4BXXXX	LD BC,(NN)	FD8EXX	ADC A,(IY+d)
DD34XX	INC(IX+d)	ED4D	RETI	FD96XX	SUB(IY+d)
DD35XX	DEC(IX+d)	ED4F	LDRA	FD9EXX	SBC A,(IY+d)
DD36XX20	LD(IX+d),N	ED50	IN D,(C)	FDA6XX	AND (IY+d)
DD39	ADD IX,SP	ED51	OUT(C),D	FDAEXX	XOR (IY+d)
DD46XX	LD B,(IX+d)	ED52	SBC HL,DE	FDB6XX	OR (IY+d)

HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC
FDBEXX	CP (IY+d)				
FDE1	POP IY				
FDE3	EX (SP), IY				
FDE5	PUSH IY				
FDE9	JP (IY)				
FDF9	LD SP, IY				
FDC8XX06	RLC(IY+d)				
FDC8XX0E	RRC(IY+d)				
FDC8XX16	RL(IY+d)				
FDC8XX1E	RR(IY+d)				
FDC8XX26	SLA(IY+d)				
FDC8XX2E	SRA(IY+d)				
FDC8XX3E	SRL(IY+d)				
FDC8XX46	BIT 0, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX4E	BIT 1, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX56	BIT 2, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX5E	BIT 3, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX66	BIT 4, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX6E	BIT 5, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX76	BIT 6, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX7E	BIT 7, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX86	RES 0, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX8E	RES 1, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX96	RES 2, (IY+d)				
FDC8XX9E	RES 3, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXA6	RES 4, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXAE	RES 5, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXB6	RES 6, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXBE	RES 7, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXC6	SET 0, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXCE	SET 1, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXD6	SET 2, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXDE	SET 3, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXE6	SET 4, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXEE	SET 5, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXF6	SET 6, (IY+d)				
FDC8XXFE	SET 7, (IY+d)				

APPENDIX I
Z80—CPU INSTRUCTIONS SORTED BY MNEMONIC

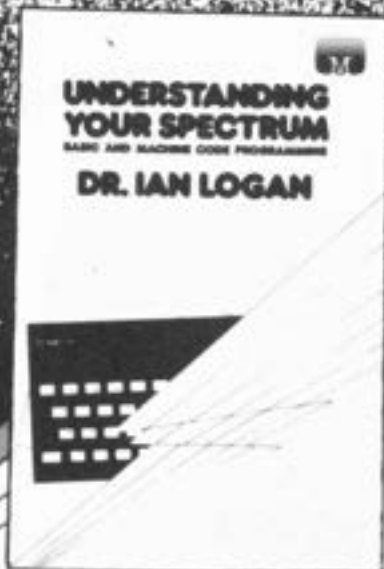
MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL
ADC A, (HL)	8E	BIT 2,B	CB 50	CP n	FE XX
ADC A, (IX+dis)	DD 8E XX	BIT 2,C	CB 51	CP E	88
ADC A, (IY+dis)	FD 8E XX	BIT 2,D	CB 52	CP H	BC
ADC A,A	8F	BIT 2,E	CB 53	CP L	8D
ADC A,B	88	BIT 2,H	CB 54	CPD	ED A9
ADC A,C	89	BIT 2,L	CB 55	CPDR	ED 89
ADC A,D	8A	BIT 3,(HL)	CB 5E	CPI	ED A1
ADC A,n	CE XX	BIT 3,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 5E	CPIR	ED 81
ADC A,E	88	BIT 3,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 5E	CPL	2F
ADC A,H	8C	BIT 3,A	CB 5F	DAA	27
ADC A,L	8D	BIT 3,B	CB 58	DEC (HL)	35
ADC HL,BC	ED 4A	BIT 3,C	CB 59	DEC (IX+dis)	DD 35 XX
ADC HL,DE	ED 5A	BIT 3,D	CB 5A	DEC (IY+dis)	FD 35 XX
ADC HL,HL	ED 6A	BIT 3,E	CB 5B	DEC A	3D
ADC HL,SP	ED 7A	BIT 3,H	CB 5C	DEC B	05
ADD A, (HL)	86	BIT 3,L	CB 5D	DEC BC	08
ADD A, (IX+dis)	DD 86XX	BIT 4,(HL)	CB 66	DEC C	0D
ADD A, (IY+dis)	FD 86XX	BIT 4,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 66	DEC D	15
ADD A,A	87	BIT 4,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 66	DEC DE	1B
ADD A,B	80	BIT 4,A	CB 67	DEC E	1D
ADD A,C	81	BIT 4,B	CB 68	DEC H	25
ADD A,D	82	BIT 4,C	CB 61	DEC HL	28
ADD A,n	C6 XX	BIT 4,D	CB 62	DEC IX	DD 28
ADD A,E	83	BIT 4,E	CB 63	DEC IY	FD 28
ADD A,H	84	BIT 4,H	CB 64	DEC L	2D
ADD A,L	85	BIT 4,L	CB 65	DEC SP	3B
ADD HL,BC	09	BIT 5,(HL)	CB 6E	DI	F3
ADD HL,DE	19	BIT 5,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 6E	DJNZ,dis	10 XX
ADD HL,HL	29	BIT 5,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 6E	EI	FB
ADD HL,SP	39	BIT 5,A	CB 6F	EX (SP),HL	E3
ADD IX,BC	DD 09	BIT 5,B	CB 68	EX (SP),IX	DD E3
ADD IX,DE	DD 19	BIT 5,C	CB 69	EX (SP),IY	FD E3
ADD IX,IX	DD 29	BIT 5,D	CB 6A	EX AF,AF'	08
ADD IX,SP	DD 39	BIT 5,E	CB 6B	EX DE,HL	E8
ADD IY,BC	FD 09	BIT 5,H	CB 6C	EXX	D9
ADD IY,DE	FD 19	BIT 5,L	CB 6D	HALT	76
ADD IY,IX	FD 29	BIT 6,(HL)	CB 76	IM 0	ED 46
ADD IY,SP	FD 39	BIT 6,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 76	IM 1	ED 56
AND (HL)	A6	BIT 6,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 76	IM 2	ED 5E
AND (IX+dis)	DD A6 XX	BIT 6,A	CB 77	IN A, (C)	ED 78
AND (IY+dis)	FD A6 XX	BIT 6,B	CB 70	IN A,port	DB XX
AND A	A7	BIT 6,C	CB 71	IN B, (C)	ED 40
AND B	A0	BIT 6,D	CB 72	IN C, (C)	ED 48
AND C	A1	BIT 6,E	CB 73	IN D, (C)	ED 50
AND D	A2	BIT 6,H	CB 74	IN E, (C)	ED 58
AND n	E6 XX	BIT 6,L	CB 75	IN H, (C)	ED 60
AND E	A3	BIT 7,(HL)	CB 7E	IN L, (C)	ED 68
AND H	A4	BIT 7,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 7E	INC (HL)	34
AND L	A5	BIT 7,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 7E	INC (IX+dis)	DD 34 XX
BIT 0,(HL)	CB 46	BIT 7,A	CB 7F	INC (IY+dis)	FD 34 XX
BIT 0,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 46	BIT 7,B	CB 78	INC A	3C
BIT 0,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 46	BIT 7,C	CB 79	INC B	04
BIT 0,A	CB 47	BIT 7,D	CB 7A	INC BC	03
BIT 0,B	CB 40	BIT 7,E	CB 7B	INC C	0C
BIT 0,C	CB 41	BIT 7,H	CB 7C	INC D	14
BIT 0,D	CB 42	BIT 7,L	CB 7D	INC DE	13
BIT 0,E	CB 43	CALL ADDR	CD XX XX	INC E	1C
BIT 0,H	CB 44	CALL C,ADDR	DC XX XX	INC H	24
BIT 0,L	CB 45	CALL M,ADDR	FC XX XX	INC HL	23
BIT 1,(HL)	CB 4E	CALL NC,ADDR	D4 XX XX	INC IX	DD 23
BIT 1,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 4E	CALL NZ,ADDR	C4 XX XX	INC IY	FD 23
BIT 1,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 4E	CALL P,ADDR	F4 XX XX	INC L	2C
BIT 1,A	CB 4F	CALL PE,ADDR	EC XX XX	INC SP	33
BIT 1,B	CB 48	CALL PO,ADDR	E4 XX XX	IND	ED AA
BIT 1,C	CB 49	CALL Z,ADDR	CC XX XX	INDR	ED BA
BIT 1,D	CB 4A	CCF	3F	INI	ED A2
BIT 1,E	CB 4B	CP (HL)	BE	INIR	ED B2
BIT 1,H	CB 4C	CP (IX+dis)	DD BE XX	JP (HL)	E9
BIT 1,L	CB 4D	CP (IY+dis)	FD BE XX	JP (IX)	DD E9
BIT 2,(HL)	CB 56	CP A	BF	JP (IY)	FD E9
BIT 2,(IX+dis)	DD CB XX 56	CP B	B8	JP ADDR	C3 XX XX
BIT 2,(IY+dis)	FD CB XX 56	CP C	B9	JP C,ADDR	DA XX XX
BIT 2,A	CB 57	CP D	BA	JP M,ADDR	FA XX XX

MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL
JP NC,ADDR	D2 XX XX	LD BC,nn	01 XX XX	LDDR	ED B8
JP NZ,ADDR	C2 XX XX	LD C, (HL)	4E	LDI	ED A0
JP P,ADDR	F2 XX XX	LD C, (IX+dis)	DD 4E xx	LDIR	ED B0
JP PE,ADDR	EA XX XX	LD C, (IY+dis)	FD 4E XX	NEG	ED 44
JP PO,ADDR	E2 XX XX	LD C,A	4F	NOP	00
JP Z,ADDR	CA XX XX	LD C,B	48	OR (HL)	B6
JR C,dis	38 XX	LD C,C	49	OR (IX+dis)	DD B6 XX
JR dis	18 XX	LD C,D	4A	OR (IY+dis)	FD B6 xx
JR NC,dis	30 XX	LD C,n	0E XX	OR A	B7
JR NZ,dis	20 XX	LD C,E	4B	OR B	B0
JR Z,dis	28 XX	LD C,H	4C	OR C	B1
LD (ADDR),A	32 XX XX	LD C,L	4D	OR D	B2
LD(ADDR),BC	ED 43 XX XX	LD D, (HL)	56	OR n	F6 XX
LD (ADDR),DE	ED 53 XX XX	LD D, (IX+dis)	DD 56 XX	OR E	B3
LD(ADDR),HL	ED 63 XX XX	LD D, (IY+dis)	FD 56 XX	OR H	B4
LD (ADDR),HL	22 XX XX	LD D,A	57	OR L	B5
LD (ADDR),IX	DD 22 XX XX	LD D,B	50	OTDR	ED 88
LD (ADDR),IY	FD 22 XX XX	LD D,C	51	OTIR	ED 83
LD (ADDR),SP	ED 73 XX XX	LD D,D	52	OUT (C),A	ED 79
LD (BC),A	02	LD D,n	16 XX	OUT (C),B	ED 41
LD (DE),A	12	LD D,E	53	OUT (C),C	ED 49
LD (HL),A	77	LD D,H	54	OUT (C),D	ED 51
LD (HL),B	70	LD D,L	55	OUT (C),E	ED 59
LD (HL),C	71	LD DE, (ADDR)	ED 5B XX XX	OUT (C),H	ED 61
LD (HL),D	72	LD DE,nn	11 XX XX	OUT (C),L	ED 69
LD (HL),n	36 XX	LD E, (HL)	5E	OUT part,A	D3 port
LD (HL),E	73	LD E, (IX+dis)	DD 5E XX	OUTD	ED A8
LD (HL),H	74	LD E, (IY+dis)	FD 5E XX	OUTI	ED A3
LD (HL),L	75	LD E,A	5F	POP AF	F1
LD (IX+dis),A	DD 77 XX	LD E,B	58	POP BC	C1
LD (IX+dis),B	DD 70 XX	LD E,C	59	POP DE	D1
LD (IX+dis),C	DD 71 XX	LD E,D	5A	POP HL	E1
LD (IX+dis),D	DD 72 XX	LD E,n	1E XX	POP IX	DD E1
LD (IX+dis),n	DD 36 XX XX	LD E,E	5B	POP IY	FD E1
LD (IX+dis),E	DD 73 XX	LD E,H	5C	PUSH AF	F5
LD (IX+dis),H	DD 74 XX	LD E,L	5D	PUSH BC	C5
LD (IX+dis),L	DD 75 XX	LD H, (HL)	66	PUSH DE	D5
LD (IY+dis),A	FD 77 XX	LD H, (IX+dis)	DD 66 XX	PUSH HL	E5
LD (IY+dis),B	FD 70 XX	LD H, (IY+dis)	FD 66 XX	PUSH IX	DD E5
LD (IY+dis),C	FD 71 XX	LD H,A	67	PUSH IY	FD E5
LD (IY+dis),D	FD 72 XX	LD H,B	60	RES 0, (HL)	CB 86
LD (IY+dis),n	FD 36 XX XX	LD H,C	61	RES 0, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 86
LD (IY+dis),E	FD 73 XX	LD H,D	62	RES 0, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 86
LD (IY+dis),H	FD 74 XX	LD H,n	26 XX	RES 0,A	CB 87
LD (IY+dis),L	FD 75 XX	LD H,E	63	RES 0,B	CB 80
LD A, (ADDR)	3A XX XX	LD H,H	64	RES 0,C	CB 81
LD A, (BC)	0A	LD H,L	65	RES 0,D	CB 82
LD A, (DE)	1A	LD HL, (ADDR)	ED 6B XX XX	RES 0,E	CB 83
LD A, (HL)	7E	LD HL, (ADDR)	2A XX XX	RES 0,H	CB 84
LD A, (IX+dis)	DD 7E XX	LD HL,nn	21 XX XX	RES 0,L	CB 85
LD A, (IY+dis)	FD 7E XX	LD I,A	ED 47	RES 1, (HL)	CB 8E
LD A,A	7F	LD IX, (ADDR)	DD 2A XX XX	RES 1, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 8E
LD A,B	78	LD IX,nn	DD 21 XX XX	RES 1, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 8E
LD A,C	79	LD IY, (ADDR)	FD 2A XX XX	RES 1,A	CB 8F
LD A,D	7A	LD IY,nn	FD 21 XX XX	RES 1,B	CB 88
LD A,n	3E XX	LD L,A	6F	RES 1,C	CB 89
LD A,E	7B	LD L,B	68	RES 1,D	CB 8A
LD A,H	7C	LD L,C	69	RES 1,E	CB 8B
LD A,I	ED 57	LD L,D	6A	RES 1,H	CB 8C
LD A,L	7D	LD L,n	2E XX	RES 1,L	CB 8D
LD A,R	ED 5F	LD L,E	6B	RES 2, (HL)	CB 96
LD B, (HL)	46	LD L, (HL)	6E	RES 2, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 96
LD B, (IX+dis)	DD 46 XX	LD L, (IX+dis)	DD 6E XX	RES 2, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 96
LD B, (IY+dis)	FD 46 XX	LD L, (IY+dis)	FD 6E XX	RES 2,A	CB 97
LD B,A	47	LD L,H	6C	RES 2,B	CB 90
LD B,B	40	LD L,L	6D	RES 2,C	CB 91
LD B,C	41	LD R,A	ED 4F	RES 2,D	CB 92
LD B,D	42	LD SP, (ADDR)	ED 7B XX XX	RES 2,E	CB 93
LD B,n	06 XX	LD SP,nn	31 XX XX	RES 2,H	CB 94
LD B,E	43	LD SP,HL	F9	RES 2,L	CB 95
LD B,H	44	LD SP,IX	DD F9	RES 3, (HL)	CB 9E
LD B,L	45	LD SP,IY	FD F9	RES 3, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 9E
LD BC, (ADDR)	ED 4B XX XX	LDD	ED A8	RES 3, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 9E
				RES 3,A	CB 9F

MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL
RES 3,B	CB 98	RLC C	CB 01	SET 1,L	CB CD
RES 3,C	CB 99	RLC D	CB 02	SET 2, (HL)	CB D6
RES 3,D	CB 9A	RLC E	CB 03	SET 2, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX D6
RES 3,E	CB 9B	RLC H	CB 04	SET 2, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX D6
RES 3,H	CB 9C	RLC L	CB 05	SET 2,A	CB D7
RES 3,L	CB 9D	RLCA	07	SET 2,B	CB D0
RES 4, (HL)	CB A6	RLD	ED 6F	SET 2,C	CB D1
RES 4, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX A6	RR (HL)	CB 1E	SET 2,D	CB D2
RES 4, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX A6	RR (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 1E	SET 2,E	CB D3
RES 4,A	CB A7	RR (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 1E	SET 2,H	CB D4
RES 4,B	CB A0	RR A	CB 1F	SET 2,L	CB D5
RES 4,C	CB A1	RR B	CB 18	SET 3, (HL)	CB DE
RES 4,D	CB A2	RR C	CB 19	SET 3, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX DE
RES 4,E	CB A3	RR D	CB 1A	SET 3, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX DE
RES 4,H	CB A4	RR E	CB 1B	SET 3,A	CB DF
RES 4,L	CB A5	RR H	CB 1C	SET 3,B	CB D8
RES 5 (HL)	CB AE	RR L	CB 1D	SET 3,C	CB D9
RES 5, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX AE	RRA	1F	SET 3,D	CB DA
RES 5, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX AE	RRC (HL)	CB 0E	SET 3,E	CB DB
RES 5,A	CB AF	RRC (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 0E	SET 3,H	CB DC
RES 5,B	CB A8	RRC (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 0E	SET 3,L	CB DD
RES 5,C	CB A9	RRC A	CB 0F	SET 4, (HL)	CB E6
RES 5,D	CB AA	RRC B	CB 08	SET 4, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX E6
RES 5,E	CB AB	RRC C	CB 09	SET 4, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX E6
RES 5,H	CB AC	RRC D	CB 0A	SET 4,A	CB E7
RES 5,L	CB AD	RRC E	CB 0B	SET 4,B	CB E0
RES 6, (HL)	CB B6	RRC H	CB 0C	SET 4,C	CB E1
RES 6, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX B6	RRC L	CB 0D	SET 4,D	CB E2
RES 6, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX B6	RRCA	0F	SET 4,E	CB E3
RES 6,A	CB B7	RRD	ED 67	SET 4,H	CB E4
RES 6,B	CB B0	RST 00	C7	SET 4,L	CB E5
RES 6,C	CB B1	RST 08	CF	SET 5, (HL)	CB EE
RES 6,D	CB B2	RST 10	D7	SET 5, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX EE
RES 6,E	CB B3	RST 18	DF	SET 5, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX EE
RES 6,H	CB B4	RST 20	E7	SET 5,A	CB EF
RES 6,L	CB B5	RST 28	EF	SET 5,B	CB E8
RES 7, (HL)	CB BE	RST 30	F7	SET 5,C	CB E9
RES 7, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX BE	RST 38	FF	SET 5,D	CB EA
RES 7, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX BE	SBC A, (HL)	9E	SET 5,E	CB EB
RES 7,A	CB BF	SBC A, (IX+dis)	DD 9E XX	SET 5,H	CB EC
RES 7,B	CB B8	SBC A, (IY+dis)	FD 9E XX	SET 5,L	CB ED
RES 7,C	CB B9	SBC A,A	9F	SET 6, (HL)	CB F6
RES 7,D	CB BA	SBC A,B	98	SET 6, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX F6
RES 7,E	CB BB	SBC A,C	99	SET 6, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX F6
RES 7,H	CB BC	SBC A,D	9A	SET 6,A	CB F7
RES 7,L	CB BD	SBC A,n	DE XX	SET 6,B	CB F0
RET	C9	SBC A,E	9B	SET 6,C	CB F1
RET C	D8	SBC A,H	9C	SET 6,D	CB F2
RET M	F8	SBC A,L	9D	SET 6,E	CB F3
RET NC	D0	SBC HL,BC	ED 42	SET 6,H	CB F4
RET NZ	C0	SBC HL,DE	ED 52	SET 6,L	CB F5
RET P	F0	SBC HL,HL	ED 62	SET 7, (HL)	CB FE
RET PE	E8	SBC HL,SP	ED 72	SET 7, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX FE
RET PO	E0	SCF	37	SET 7, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX FE
RET Z	C8	SET 0, (HL)	CB C6	SET 7,A	CB FF
RETI	ED 4D	SET 0, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX C6	SET 7,B	CB F8
RETN	ED 45	SET 0, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX C6	SET 7,C	CB F9
RL (HL)	CB 16	SET 0,A	CB C7	SET 7,D	CB FA
RL (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 16	SET 0,B	CB C0	SET 7,E	CB FB
RL (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 16	SET 0,C	CB C1	SET 7,H	CB FC
RL A	CB 17	SET 0,D	CB C2	SET 7,L	CB FD
RL B	CB 10	SET 0,E	CB C3	SLA (HL)	CB 26
RL C	CB 11	SET 0,H	CB C4	SLA (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 26
RL D	CB 12	SET 0,L	CB C5	SLA (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 26
RL E	CB 13	SET 1, (HL)	CB CE	SLA A	CB 27
RL H	CB 14	SET 1, (IX+dis)	DD CB XX CE	SLA B	CB 20
RL L	CB 15	SET 1, (IY+dis)	FD CB XX CE	SLA C	CB 21
RLA	17	SET 1,A	CB CF	SLA D	CB 22
RLC (HL)	CB 06	SET 1,B	CB C8	SLA E	CB 23
RLC (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 06	SET 1,C	CB C9	SLA H	CB 24
RLC (IY+dis)	FD CB XX 06	SET 1,D	CB CA	SLA L	CB 25
RLC A	CB 07	SET 1,E	CB CB	SRA (HL)	CB 2E
RLC B	CB 00	SET 1,H	CB CC	SRA (IX+dis)	DD CB XX 2E

MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL	MNEMONIC	HEXADECIMAL
SRA (iY+dis)	FD CB XX 2E				
SRA A	CB 2F				
SRA B	CB 28				
SRA C	CB 29				
SRA D	CB 2A				
SRA E	CB 2B				
SRA H	CB 2C				
SRA L	CB 2D				
SRL (HL)	CB 3E				
SRL (iX+dis)	DD CB XX 3E				
SRL (iY+dis)	FD CB XX 3E				
SRL A	CB 3F				
SRL B	CB 38				
SRL C	CB 39				
SRL D	CB 3A				
SRL E	CB 3B				
SRL H	CB 3C				
SRL L	CB 3D				
SUB (HL)	96				
SUB (iX+dis)	DD 96 XX				
SUB (iY+dis)	FD 96 XX				
SUB A	97				
SUB B	90				
SUB C	91				
SUB D	92				
SUB E	93				
SUB n	D6 XX				
SUB H	94				
SUB L	95				
XOR (HL)	AE				
XOR (iX+dis)	DD AE XX				
XOR (iY+dis)	FD AE XX				
XOR A	AF				
XOR B	A8				
XOR C	A9				
XOR D	AA				
XOR n	EE XX				
XOR E	AB				
XSOR H	AC				
XOR L	AD				

ANNOUNCING The BEST Books For Your SPECTRUM



Dr. Ian Logan is the acknowledged leading authority on Sinclair computers. In this book, he gives a complete overview of the way the Spectrum operates, both for BASIC and machine language programming. A special section on the ROM operating system will give you insight into this computer as well as provide you with information on how to use many of the routines present in the ROM. This book is a must if you are serious about programming the Spectrum. Only £7.95



Over the Spectrum is the book where you will find your dreams really do come true. If you want to know how to use the complete facility of the Spectrum, as well as have the full listing for over 30 Spectrum programs, this is the book for you. Fantastic programs such as the incredible 3D-Mazeman, Alien Invaders, just to mention two. Games, utilities, educational and business programs are all in Over the Spectrum. Only £6.95.



This title speaks for itself, it's everything you need to understand about Spectrum Machine Language when you're just starting off. A must for all new Spectrum owners. Only £6.95

After leading the way in Sinclair ZX81 software, we've produced the highest quality, most exciting Spectrum software available. From the three excellent books depicted above to fast-action games on cassette, we're providing the best choice in Sinclair Spectrum software today.

Whether it's for your new Spectrum or ZX81 Melbourne House has books and programs perfectly suited to your needs.

Send for your Spectrum or ZX81 catalogue today.

Cassette of all programs from Spectrum Machine Language book is available from Melbourne House.

U.S.A.: Melbourne House Software Inc.,
347 Reedwood Drive, Nashville TN 37217.

U.K. Melbourne House (Publishers) Ltd.,
Globe Cottage, Glebe House, Station Road,
Cheddington, Leighton Buzzard, BEDS LU7 7NA

Australia & New Zealand:
Melbourne House (Australia) Pty Ltd,
Suite 4/75 Palmerston Crescent,
Sth. Melbourne 3205.



**MELBOURNE
HOUSE
PUBLISHERS**

INDEX

A

Absolute address 36, 47
 Absolute jump 101
 Accumulator 34, 135
 ADD 68, 69
 Add with carry 96
 adding 12, 15, 31, 126
 Addresses 30, 45-47, 54, 69, 83, 106, 135
 Alphanumeric 24, 28
 Alternate register 35, 36
 AND 75, 76, 78, 136
 Arithmetic calculations 7, 58
 Arithmetic logic unit 31
 Arithmetic operations 62, 68, 95, 126
 Array 106
 ASCII 28
 Assembly language 8, 9, 60
 Attribute file 57, 65, 132, 142

B

BASIC 5-8, 10, 13, 23, 39, 130
 BEEP 144
 Binary 18, 24, 25
 Binary coded decimal 62, 63, 126
 Bit set 117
 Bits 19-21, 23, 24, 32, 34, 75
 Block 109, 123, 134
 Boolean operators 75, 77
 BORCR 124
 BUSRQ 124
 Byte 24, 29, 34, 45, 135

C

Calculations 11, 14, 15
 Calculator 31
 CALL 106
 Carry 70, 119, 126
 Carry arithmetic 97
 Carry flag 60, 63, 70, 77, 96, 99, 105, 106
 Cassette 122
 Characters 24, 28
 Character position 142
 Checksum 162-163
 Clockspeed 30
 COBOL 6
 Coding 131, 132
 Colours 57, 124, 144
 Compare 72
 Conditional jump 61
 Control unit 31
 CP 72
 CPD 110
 CPDR 110
 CPI 109
 CPIR 110
 CPU 5, 11-15, 30

D

DAA 126
 Debug 7
 DEC 66
 Decimal 18-20, 22, 23, 70, 126
 Decrease 66, 67
 Delay loop 104
 DI 124, 127
 Displacement 47, 54
 Division 121
 DJNZ 104
 Dump 56

E

EBCDIC 28
 Electrical signals 5, 6
 EI 124, 127
 Ex 115
 Exchange register 36, 115
 External addressing 52, 80, 81
 Execution 6, 10

F

Firmware 10
 Flags 32, 58, 66, 72, 96, 99
 Flag register 34, 58
 Freeway frog 161-163
 Frequency 125, 144

H

Half carry flag 62, 63, 66, 77, 126
 HALT 10
 Hardware 34
 Hexadecimal 19-23, 70
 HEXLOAD 155-160
 High level language 130
 High order byte 140
 Highest bit 25, 33
 HL register 34

I

Immediate addressing 44, 79
 Immediate extended
 addressing 55, 79, 81
 Immediate indexed addressing 55
 INC 8, 64
 Increase 64, 67
 Index registers 79, 97
 Indexed addressing 47
 Indicator 58
 Ink 57
 Instruction register 31
 Instruction set 52
 Instructions 10, 58
 INT 127
 Integer 25, 29
 Interrupt 14, 127
 Interrupt vector register 37

J

JP 61, 63, 99
 Jumps 99, 102

K

Keyboard 5, 122, 135

L

Labels 131
 LD 43, 70, 86, 111
 Logical operators 75, 117
 Logical operations 62, 63
 Loops 99
 Loudspeaker 125, 144
 Low byte 85, 89
 Low order 136, 140

M

Matrix 135
 Megahertz 30
 Memory 6, 10, 14, 17, 29, 86, 87, 144
 Mnemonics 8, 9, 13, 43
 Modes 55, 79

N		
Nanosecond	52	
Negative numbers	25, 29	
NMI	127	
Numbers	8, 24	
O		
Operands	71	
Operating system	5-7, 39, 41, 135	
OR	75, 76, 78	
Overflow	96	
P		
PAPER	57	
Parity/overflow	62, 63, 66, 77, 97, 105, 106	
PEEK	7	
Pins	6, 30	
Pointer	46, 47, 79	
POP	14, 15, 17, 37, 81, 91, 98	
Port	135, 144	
Processor	30	
Program counter	31, 100, 101, 127	
PUSH	14, 15, 17, 37, 81, 91, 98	
R		
R register	37	
RAM	31	
Random number	37	
Registers	12, 17, 32, 54, 69, 83	
Register addressing	45, 48, 51, 80, 81	
Register indirect addressing	46, 54, 80	
Relative jump	101	
Relocatable	47	
RET	98, 106	
RETI	127	
RLA	119	
RLCA	120	
ROM	7, 10, 31, 39, 124, 128, 135	
Rotate	119	
RST	128	
S		
SBC	77	
Shift	119	
Sign flag	59, 63, 66, 77, 97, 105, 106	
Signed integer	25, 29	
Silicon chip	30	
Sound	124, 125, 144	
SUB	71	
SUBC	71	
Subroutines	106, 131	
Subtracting	12, 15, 31, 126	
Subtraction flag (negate)	62, 63, 66, 77	
SRA	121	
Stack	14, 15, 17, 91, 127	
Stack pointer	36, 92, 96, 97	
STKEND	97	
Syntax	130	
T		
Top down	130	
Translation	79	
Two's complement	27, 29	
U		
ULA	124, 144	
User register	31, 32, 38	
USR	39, 41, 56, 88, 93, 98	
V		
Variable	8, 13, 14, 55	
Video screen	138	
W		
WAIT	124	
X		
XOR	75, 76, 78	
Z		
Zero flag	58, 59, 63, 66, 77, 97, 99, 105, 106	
Zero page	127	
Z80A, Z80	5, 6, 30	

SPECTRUM
MACHINE LANGUAGE FOR THE
ABSOLUTE BEGINNER

=====

REGISTRATION
CARD

Please fill out this page and return it promptly in order that we may keep you informed of new software and special offers that arise. Simply cut along the dotted line and return it to the correct address selected from those overleaf.

Where did you learn of this product?

- ☐ Magazine. If so, which one?.....
- ☐ Through a friend
- ☐ Saw it in a Retail Store
- ☐ Other. Please specify.....

Which Magazines do you purchase?

Regularly:.....

Occasionally:.....

What Age are you?

- ☐ 10-15 ☐ 16-19 ☐ 20-24 ☐ Over 25

We are continually writing new material and would appreciate receiving your comments on our product.

How would you rate this book?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Excellent | <input type="checkbox"/> Value for money |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Good | <input type="checkbox"/> Priced right |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Poor | <input type="checkbox"/> Overpriced |

Please tell us what software you would like to see produced for your computer.

Name.....

Address.....

.....Code.....

PUT THIS IN A STAMPED ENVELOPE AND SEND TO:

In the United States of America return page to:

Melbourne House Software Inc., 347 Reedwood Drive,
Nashville TN 37217.

In the United Kingdom return page to:

Melbourne House (Publishers) Ltd., Melbourne House, Church Yard,
Tring, Hertfordshire, HP23 5LU

In Australia & New Zealand return page to:

Melbourne House (Australia) Pty. Ltd., Suite 4, 75 Palmerston Crescent,
South Melbourne, Victoria, 3205.

SPECTRUM



Melbourne
House

'Your best course is to work through a book such as William Tang's *Spectrum Machine Language For The Absolute Beginner*.

'This book is one of the best I have seen on the subject — for once the title is right on the nose! I can recommend this to anyone just getting interested.' — Popular Computing Weekly.

If you are are frustrated by the limitations of BASIC and want to write faster, more powerful, space-saving programs or subroutines, then *Spectrum Machine Language For The Absolute Beginner* is the book for you.

Even with no previous experience of computer languages, you will be able to discover the ease and power of the Spectrum's own language. Each chapter includes specific examples of machine language applications which can be demonstrated and used on your Spectrum, as well as a self-test questionnaire.

At the end of the book, all this is brought together into an entire machine language program — from design right through to the complete listing of an exciting, original arcade game.



Melbourne
House
Publishers

ISBN 0-86161-110-1

